

H. Q. Mitchell
Marilena Malkogianni

Grammar & Vocabulary Practice

Upper-Intermediate - B2

for all exams



2nd
edition

Introduction

Grammar Practice & Vocabulary is aimed at **upper-intermediate / B2** level students.

As well as teaching grammar points, the aim of the book is to familiarise students with the format of the Use of English Paper of the **Cambridge FCE** Examination, as well as with the Grammar and Vocabulary sections of the **University of Michigan ECCE**.

This book consists of **24 units, 6 revision units and 2 practice tests**.

Each unit is made up of:

- **Grammar**

a thorough review of grammatical structures with clear explanations and examples illustrating every structure

- **Grammar exercises**

a variety of exercises, some of which are modelled on either Paper 3 of the **Cambridge FCE** Examination, or the grammar section of the **Michigan ECCE**, providing general practice on the grammatical structures taught in the unit

- **Transformation**

rewording sentences using key words; this exercise tests grammar

- **Phrasal Verbs**

clear explanations of a set of phrasal verbs together with an exercise practising them

- **Prepositions and Prepositional phrases**

an exercise practising the use of prepositions with verbs, nouns and adjectives as well as their use in idioms

- **Derivatives**

an exercise based on word formation to help students enrich their vocabulary

- **Words easily confused**

clear explanations of words that students commonly confuse and an exercise practising them.

Revision exercises follow every 3-5 units, and at the back of the book there are two practice tests. These **Practice Tests** are modelled on the **Cambridge FCE Use of English Paper** and on the Grammar and Vocabulary sections of the **University of Michigan Examination for the ECCE**.

The book also includes a **dictionary** and **appendices** with:

- **Prepositions**

- **Prepositional Phrases**

- **Derivatives**

Grammar & Vocabulary Practice 2nd edition

H.Q. Mitchell - Marilena Malkogianni

Published by: **MM Publications**

www.mmpublications.com
info@mmpublications.com

Offices

UK Cyprus France Greece Poland Turkey USA

Associated companies and representatives throughout the world.

Copyright © 2012 MM Publications

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without permission in writing from the publishers.

The publishers have tried to contact all copyright holders, but in cases where they may have failed, they will be pleased to make the necessary arrangements at the first opportunity.

Produced in the EU

Contents

Unit 1	Present Time	4
Unit 2	Past Time	8
Unit 3	Present Perfect	12
Unit 4	Future Time	17
	Revision 1	21
Unit 5	Infinitive	24
Unit 6	-ing form	29
Unit 7	Modal Verbs I	34
Unit 8	Modal Verbs II	39
	Revision 2	44
Unit 9	Articles	47
Unit 10	Nouns	52
Unit 11	Adjectives-Adverbs-Comparisons	57
Unit 12	Determiners	64
	Revision 3	69
Unit 13	Pronouns-Possessives	72
Unit 14	Passive Voice	77
Unit 15	Causative Form	82
Unit 16	Conditionals	86
	Revision 4	91
Unit 17	Unreal Past-Would rather-Had better	94
Unit 18	Reported Speech	100
Unit 19	Question Forms	106
Unit 20	Clauses I	112
Unit 21	Clauses II	118
	Revision 5	124
Unit 22	Linking Words	127
Unit 23	Participles	132
Unit 24	Emphatic/Exclamatory Structures-Inversion	136
	Revision 6	141
	Final FCE Practice Test	144
	Final ECCE Practice Test	148
	Dictionary	153
	Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns with Prepositions	161
	Prepositional Phrases	163
	Derivatives	165
	Irregular Verbs	168

01 Present Time

The Present Simple is used:

- for habitual or repeated actions and situations.
I go to the park once a week.
- for general truths and natural phenomena.
The earth goes round the sun.
Most rivers flow into the sea.
- for permanent situations in the present.
James lives in Zurich.
- for future actions related to timetables and programmes.
The train leaves at six o'clock.
- for headlines, sports commentaries, story-telling, reviews of books, directions and instructions.
Three men rob bank.
Martin takes the ball and scores.
In this chapter, Bob meets his old friend, Charlie.
You turn left at this junction and you'll find it.
- in exclamatory sentences with "Here...!" / "There...!"
Here comes the bride! There he goes again!

Time Expressions

often, usually, always, never, sometimes, seldom, rarely, hardly ever, every day/week, etc.

The Present Progressive is used:

- for actions or events happening at or around the time of speaking.
Look! That boy is climbing up a tree.
- for temporary states in the present.
David is doing his military service.
I'm studying French this term.
- for situations which are changing or developing around the present.
The problem of pollution is getting more and more serious.
- for planned future actions related to personal arrangements.
I'm travelling to London tomorrow.
- with adverbs of frequency (*constantly, always, etc.*), for emphasis or to express annoying habits.
Sam is very kind; he is always helping the poor.
Steve is always leaving his clothes on the floor!

Time Expressions

now, at present, at the moment, nowadays, this month, etc.

Stative Verbs

They express a state - not an action - and are not used in Progressive Tenses:

- verbs of the senses:
feel, hear, see, smell, taste, notice, etc.
- verbs of emotions and preferences:
like, dislike, love, hate, fear, mind, want, wish, need, prefer, admire, etc.
- verbs of perception, belief, knowledge, ownership:
think, believe, know, understand, expect, remember, forget, hope, have, own, belong (to), etc.
- other verbs which describe permanent states:
be, cost, weigh, seem, appear, consist (of), etc.

note

Some stative verbs can be used in the progressive forms when they express actions rather than states, but with a difference in meaning.

State

They have a wonderful house.
I see Mary coming towards us.
I think she is clever.
Do I smell smoke?
This chewing gum tastes like strawberry.
He is very selfish. (=that is his character.)

Action

I'm having a bath now.
I'm seeing the doctor tomorrow at 11:00.
I'm thinking of buying a new car.
Why are you smelling the milk? Do you think it's gone off?
She is tasting the soup to see if it needs any more salt.
Why is he being selfish? (=why is he behaving so selfishly?)

Listen, look and watch, though verbs of the senses, can also be used in the progressive tenses because they express voluntary actions.

James is watching the news.

Grammar Practice

A Read what the following people have to say about learning English in Britain. Complete with the Present Progressive or the Present Simple of the verbs in brackets.

As part of my job, I (1) _____ (travel) abroad a lot, so I (2) _____ (need) to improve my English. For this reason, I (3) _____ (attend) a course in Business English at a language school in London. The course (4) _____ (last) three weeks.



I (5) _____ (come) from Italy but I (6) _____ (study) in England at the moment. I (7) _____ (stay) with a British family. In this way, my English (8) _____ (improve) faster because I (9) _____ just _____ (not use) it in the classroom but in my everyday life as well.

I (10) _____ (visit) England every two or three years, so I (11) _____ (speak) some English but not much. At present I (12) _____ (do) a course at a language school in London and I (13) _____ (learn) lots of new stuff! Apart from that, in the afternoons I (14) _____ (go) out with my classmates and we (15) _____ (try) to practise our English as much as possible.



B Circle the correct answers.

- In this story, a boy **finds / is finding** a time machine and **travels / is travelling** through time.
- Don't bother me now. I **write / am writing** an important letter.
- I **am thinking / think** about grandmother. We hardly ever **visit / are visiting** her. Let's visit her tomorrow.
- The minibus, which **is taking / takes** people to the other side of the island, **leaves / is leaving** at 11:00 am and **is returning / returns** at 6:00 pm.
- I **sleep / am sleeping** at my mother's house this week because I **am having / have** my house painted.
- Why **are you leaving / do you leave** so early tomorrow morning?
- I **think / am thinking** you should buy him a tie. He **is liking / likes** to dress formally.
- Flowers **bloom / are blooming** in spring.
- You **are turning / turn** left at the traffic lights and **go / are going** up Oxford Street.
- Here **comes / is coming** Tom. Let's tell him the news.

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. John never stops criticising my friends.

always John _____ my friends.

2. We've arranged to meet at 8:00 pm tomorrow.

are We _____ at 8:00 pm tomorrow.

3. What time is your plane scheduled to arrive at Heathrow?

land What time _____ at Heathrow?

4. I have arranged to have dinner with Jerry tonight.

am I _____ with Jerry tonight.

5. The older he gets, the more eccentric he becomes.

is As time goes by, he _____ eccentric.

6. They don't like spicy food, so they avoid eating it.

never They _____ as they don't like it.

7. Jack has found a job in a supermarket for the summer.

is Jack _____ in a supermarket this summer.

8. How much is that green jacket, please?

cost How much _____, please?

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

ask for: request sth

ask out: invite sb to go out with you

blow up: (cause to) explode

break down: (1) stop working (for a piece of machinery)

(2) lose control of your feelings or emotions

break in: enter a building illegally or by force (intransitive)

break into: enter a building illegally or by force (transitive)

break up: (1) divide into smaller parts
(2) end a meeting, gathering, etc.

It was my first day at work so I (1) _____ my best friend to celebrate it with me. When we had finished having dinner, I (2) _____ the bill.

As I was looking out of the window, I saw three masked men trying to (3) _____ the bank across the street. Before I could react, there was an explosion. The robbers had (4) _____ a car that was parked near the bank to distract people's attention, so that they could (5) _____ without being noticed.

Just then, the robbers ran out of the bank and got into a white Fiat. But they were unlucky. Five hundred metres down the street their car (6) _____ and they were caught.

After the incident, the police (7) _____ the crowd of people that had gathered and life returned to normal again.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

at the age of:	a person's age at the time of an event
at the beginning (of):	at the start of sth
at breakfast/lunch/dinner:	the time of the meal during which sth happens
at the end (of):	at the last part of sth
at first:	initially
at first sight:	when first seen
at ... km per hour:	the speed at which sth moves

1. Tax forms must be handed in _____ of March.
After the 10th, you will have to pay a fine.
2. _____, the city seems to be a mass of concrete buildings but, in fact, it has some very old and interesting areas.
3. _____ 35, Mark decided to study engineering.
4. Tom had an accident because he was speeding. He was driving _____ 140 _____.
5. _____ of the game, we couldn't decide who the winner was.
6. _____, I thought she was joking, but then I realised that she was serious.
7. The boss wants to talk to us _____ today, so make sure you're back at the office by 12:30 pm.

C Complete using the correct form of the verbs given.

rent (v):	regularly pay money to the owner of sth in order to have and use it for a long period of time
hire (v):	(1) pay money to the owner of sth in order to use it for a period of time (2) employ sb to do a particular job for you
let (v):	allow the use of your property in exchange for money
leave (v):	forget or deliberately not take sb or sth with you (used when the place is mentioned)
forget (v):	fail to remember or bring sth with you
borrow (v):	take sth from sb with their permission, intending to return it in the future
lend (v):	allow sb to use sth that you own for a period of time

1. My parents never _____ their country house because they go there every weekend.
2. When he moved to the city, he _____ a flat.
3. The school _____ a teacher to help the slow learners.
4. We couldn't get into the art exhibition since we had _____ the invitations at home.
5. I couldn't pay for the shoes I wanted to buy. I had _____ to take my credit card.
6. If you _____ something from a friend, you should take good care of it.
7. Steve never _____ his books to anybody.

unit | 02 | Past Time

A

The Past Simple is used to describe:

- completed actions that took place at a definite time in the past. The time is either mentioned or implied.

Mary visited the British Museum when she was in London.

Peter won first prize in the art competition.

- permanent situations in the past.

John lived in Ireland for 15 years. (He doesn't live there any more.)

- completed actions that took place one after the other in the past (in storytelling or narratives).

Sue woke up, washed her face and had breakfast.

- past habits or repeated actions in the past; adverbs of frequency (*always, often, seldom, never, etc.*) may also be used.

When Paul was younger, he often went fishing with his father.

Time Expressions

yesterday, then, ago, last month/night/week, when, etc.

note

- **used to + infinitive** expresses permanent states, past habits or repeated actions in the past.

My grandfather used to be a librarian.

He used to run really fast when he was younger.

- **would + infinitive** expresses past habits or describes someone's typical behaviour in the past.

Every evening he would do his homework, watch TV and go to bed quite early.

The Past Perfect Simple is used:

- for an action which was completed before another one in the past. The action which happened first is in the Past Perfect Simple while the action which followed is in the Past Simple (in time clauses introduced by *before, after, when, by the time*). However, when we describe the actions in the order that they happened, we often use the Past Simple.
By the time we arrived, they had left.

They (had) hung up before I answered the phone.

- for a past action that was completed before a definite time in the past.

Angela had finished cooking by 11:30 am.

- with adjectives in the superlative degree and expressions such as: *the first/second..., the only..., etc.*

That was the first time I had been to Paris.

It was the worst time I had ever had.

Time Expressions

by+a certain time, by the time, after, before, when, etc.

The Past Progressive is used to describe:

- an action that was in progress at a definite time in the past.

This time last Friday, I was flying to London.

- actions happening at the same time in the past.
While Helen was cooking, Alex was studying.

- a lengthy action that was in progress when a shorter or sudden one interrupted it. The longer action is in the Past Progressive and the shorter one is in the Past Simple (usually introduced by *when*).

She was having dinner when the lights went out.

- background scenes to a story.

It was early in the evening and it was beginning to get dark. He was having a cup of tea....

- temporary past states or actions.

He was writing a book in those days.

- repeated past actions or annoying past habits (with *always, continually, etc.*).

My brother was always getting into trouble in the past.

Time Expressions

while, as, etc.

note

The Past Perfect Progressive is used:

- to emphasise the duration of an action that had been in progress up to a moment in the past or before another past event.

By 1987, he had been working in New York for 5 years.

He had been teaching for 35 years when he retired.

- for an action whose duration caused visible results later on in the past.

When they came back from the park, their clothes were dirty. They had been playing in the mud for hours!

Time Expressions

by, for, since, after, before, how long, etc.

1.

B

1.

3.

4.

5.

Grammar Practice

A Circle the correct answers.

1. As a teenager, I **used** / **would** to do things that my parents **weren't approving** / **didn't approve** of.
 They **were always complaining** / **had always been complaining** about my actions. When they **lectured** / **had lectured** me, I **had covered** / **would cover** my ears and ignore them. Now, I'm experiencing the same thing with my own children!



2. Today I **had had** / **had** an awful day. I **arrived** / **was arriving** at the office, **sat** / **was sitting** down at my desk and suddenly **had discovered** / **discovered** that I **had lost** / **lost** a document on my computer because of a virus. I **worked** / **had been working** on it for the past two days. As if that **wasn't** / **wasn't** being enough, a colleague **would get** / **was getting** on my nerves. While I **had been trying** / **was trying** to remain calm, he **had laughed** / **was laughing** at me.



B Rephrase the following sentences using the words in brackets.

1. I put on ten kilos and then I decided to go on a diet. (**by the time**)

2. First they washed the car and then they waxed it. (**after**)

3. Lisa made a sandwich and then sat on the sofa to relax. (**before**)

4. We packed our suitcases and then left for the airport. (**as soon as**)

5. Judy was walking down the street when she saw an accident. (**as**)

C Choose the correct answers.

1. When the children _____ home, it was obvious that they had been playing in mud.
a. were arriving b. arrived c. arrive
2. Michael _____ in the queue to buy a ticket for the train when he heard a strange noise.
a. waited b. was waiting c. had waited
3. In my youth, I _____ the world and often slept under the stars.
a. travelled b. was travelling c. travel
4. The thieves _____ houses for two years before they were finally caught.
a. had been breaking into b. are breaking into c. break into
5. I _____ my studies by 1990.
a. complete b. was completing c. had completed

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. When he was younger, he went to the gym four times a week.
used When he was younger, he _____ the gym four times a week.
2. I hadn't tasted Chinese food before.
first It was the _____ Chinese food.
3. While we were in London, it never stopped raining.
continuously It _____ while we were in London.
4. I worked at a restaurant in those days.
was In those days, I _____ at a restaurant.
5. After walking a mile, they realised that someone was missing.
had They _____ a mile when they realised that someone was missing.
6. That was the only science-fiction book he had read.
never He _____ a science-fiction book before.
7. When Mark was a student, he was in the habit of forgetting his books.
always Mark _____ his books when he was a student.
8. Jake made a speech and then we left the ceremony.
until We didn't leave the ceremony _____ a speech.



Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

at last:	finally
at least:	no less than; the minimum that could be done
at night:	late in the evening
at noon:	in the middle of the day
at peace/war:	in a state of harmony/conflict
at present:	now
at the same time:	simultaneously

1. The unemployment rate is high _____.
2. You could _____ clean up your room. You don't do anything to help me with the housework.
3. He started working on this report at 8:00 am and stopped _____ for lunch.
4. You shouldn't eat and talk _____.
5. _____ the bus arrived. We had been waiting for an hour.
6. The baby always woke up _____ and started crying. It was afraid of the dark.
7. In order to be happy, you should always be _____ with yourself.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

GARLIC EVERY DAY KEEPS THE DOCTOR AWAY

You may know that Asian, Middle Eastern and Mediterranean cultures have (1) _____ used garlic in their dishes. What you may not know is that garlic was also thought of as a (2) _____ medicine by many ancient civilisations. Today, (3) _____ in the field of nutrition have come up with new (4) _____ which they did not expect to find and have said the results are quite (5) _____. Apparently, not only is garlic good for you but it also helps you overcome various (6) _____. The main (7) _____ of eating this potent vegetable is, of course, bad (8) _____. Cooking it reduces the strong smell, and eating parsley helps minimise the smell because it is a (9) _____ deodoriser. So, it's time we took the benefits of garlic (10) _____. Why not add it to some of your (11) _____ dishes?

TRADITION

VALUE

PROFESSION

INFORM

SURPRISE

ILL

ADVANTAGE

BREATHE

NATURE

SERIOUS

FAVOUR

C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

job (n):	the work sb does in order to earn money; employment
work (n):	(1) particular tasks sb has to do in their job (2) the place where sb does their job
duty (n):	the work that sb is responsible for getting done
task (n):	activity sb has to do, usually as part of a larger project
see (v):	notice, observe, take a look at sb/sth
watch (v):	look at sb/sth for a period of time and observe what is happening
look (at) (v):	turn your eyes to a particular direction, see what is there or what sb/sth is like

1. Don't interrupt me now. I've got a lot of _____ to do.
2. Jim found a good _____ close to where he lives.
3. One of my _____ as a nurse is to be on time because lives depend on it.
4. Our teacher gave us a few _____ to do during the summer holidays.
5. I happened to _____ out of my window when my cousin was walking past.
6. Did you _____ Mike's new pair of jeans? They were really nice.
7. I _____ the football match before I went to bed.

03 Present Perfect

The Present Perfect Simple is used:

- for actions/states which started in the past and are still happening.
I have known him for three years. (I still know him.)
- for past actions whose results are connected to the present.
The baby has spilt the milk. (The floor is dirty.)
- to announce news, changes or events that affect the present.
He has lost all his money.
- for past actions whose time is not stated, or for recently completed actions.
He has travelled all over India.
I've just finished my homework.
- with **today, this morning/week** etc., if these periods of time are not finished at the time of speaking.
He has written two letters this morning. (It is still morning.)
- with adjectives in the superlative degree or expressions like: *the only/first/second..., etc.*
This is the most expensive suit I've ever bought.
This is the third time Jack has visited the USA.

Time Expressions

since, for, just, yet, already, how long, ever, never, etc.

Differences

The Present Perfect Simple is used:

- for permanent situations.
She has lived in London all her life.
- to emphasise the result of an action.
I've called him three times this morning.
- for actions that are already finished.
Look at the car. Sam has washed it.

The Present Perfect Simple is used:

- for past events which have a connection to the present. **The exact time is not mentioned.**
I've found a new job.
- for events that began in the past but are still happening in the present.
I have lived in Athens for ten years. (I still live in Athens.)
- with **today, this morning/week**, etc. if these periods of time are not finished at the time of speaking.
Janet has called me twice this morning. (The morning is not over yet.)

The Present Perfect Progressive is used:

- to emphasise the duration of an action which started in the past and is still happening. The action may or may not be completed.
They have been studying French for five years.
- for actions that have been going on up to the recent past with obvious results in the present.
"Why is the road so slippery?"
"It has been raining."
- for actions which are temporary rather than permanent.
He has been working overtime this week as there is a lot of work to do at the office.
- to show anger, annoyance, irritation or to demand an explanation for a very recent action.
Who has been wearing my coat?
Why have you been crying?

Time Expressions

how long, for, since, all day/morning, etc.

The Present Perfect Progressive is used:

- for temporary situations.
He has been staying with friends for two months, but now he wants to get his own place.
- to emphasise the duration of an action.
I've been calling him since ten o'clock.
- for actions that may or may not be finished.
Sam has been washing the car for an hour.

The Past Simple is used:

- for completed past events which are not connected to the present. **The exact time is mentioned.**
I found a new job three months ago.
- for events that took place for a certain period of time in the past but are over at the time of speaking.
Sam lived in Manchester for three years but now he lives in Liverpool.
- with **today, this morning/week**, etc. if these periods of time are finished.
Janet called me twice this morning. (The morning is over.)

note

They've been to Italy. (They are back now.)

They've gone to Italy. (They are still there.)

feel, live, sleep, study, teach, wait, work, etc. can be used in the Present Perfect Simple or the Present Perfect Progressive with no difference in meaning.

He has worked in that factory for three years. *He has been working in that factory for three years.*

Time Expressions

A. for - since

For is used when we want to indicate the length of a period of time.

Since is used when we want to indicate the starting point of a period of time.



She's been talking on the phone — *for two hours.*
since seven o'clock./she came back from work.

since + Past Simple (affirmative)

It has been a long time since we saw him. (...since we didn't see him.)

B. yet - already

yet is used only in interrogative and negative sentences and is placed at the end of the sentence.

Have you finished yet?

He hasn't arrived yet.

already is used in affirmative and interrogative sentences; it is usually placed between the auxiliary and the main verb, but can also appear at the end of the sentence for emphasis.

I have already been to the Science Museum.

Have you already read this book?

You've finished your homework already!

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. This is the second time I _____ this documentary.
 a. am watching b. have watched c. watch
2. Hello, I _____ about your advertisement in the newspaper.
 a. have been calling b. am calling c. call
3. John _____ on a bit of weight lately, and he is trying to lose it.
 a. has put b. is putting c. puts
4. The new neighbours _____ their house. It looks nice!
 a. paint b. had painted c. have painted
5. Fred _____ me yesterday that they're professional athletes.
 a. told b. has told c. is telling
6. Apparently, he _____ them since he was a child.
 a. is knowing b. has known c. has been knowing

B Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Simple, the Present Perfect Progressive or the Past Simple.

1. **Jack:** I think I _____ (lose) my sunglasses.
 I _____ (look) for them since noon, but I can't find them. And they _____ (be) very expensive!
- Andy:** I _____ (lose) three pairs so far and I _____ (learn) my lesson. I only buy cheap sunglasses now. Maybe you _____ (leave) them at Harry's house this morning.
- Jack:** No, I _____ (already/ask) him.



2. **Debbie:** This is the most interesting book I _____ (ever/read).
- Pat:** Where _____ you _____ (get) that book?
 I _____ (try) to find it for months now!

Debbie: My brother _____ (give) it to me.

3. **Tony:** I'm afraid Tom isn't here. He _____ (deliver) newspapers since 7:00 am, but he should be back soon.
- Peter:** He _____ (leave) three messages on my answering machine but I'm not home, so please tell him to call me at my grandparents' house. I _____ (stay) with them for the past two weeks, but I _____ (forget) to tell Tom when I last _____ (see) him.

C Rephrase the following sentences using the word in brackets.

1. Liam is swimming in the pool. He started swimming half an hour ago. (**for**)

2. Dave has had this computer for three weeks. (**ago**)

3. They went to the supermarket at 6:00 pm. Now, it's 7:00 pm. (**for**)

4. It's 10:00 am and I'm about to start writing my fourth letter. (**so far**)

5. I started training five months ago. Now, it's August. (**since**)

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. He has never driven another car since he started driving.

only This is the _____ since he started driving.

2. The last time I watched TV was a week ago.

for I _____ a week.

3. When did he start working for this company?

been How long _____ for this company?

4. This is her second visit to the dentist this month.

time This is the _____ the dentist this month.

5. Let's not go to a café as I had some coffee earlier.

already Let's not go to a café as I _____ some coffee.

6. Ray still doesn't know which car to buy.

made Ray _____ his mind which car to buy.

7. We have never experienced such a cold winter in Greece before.

ever It's the coldest _____ in Greece.

8. We bought this house two years ago.

had We _____ two years.



Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

call off: cancel sth

carry on: continue doing sth

carry out: perform a task

catch up (with): (1) reach sb by walking/running faster
 (2) reach the same level as sb

- Mike has been ill for a week. He will have to work really hard to _____ his class.
- The match was _____ due to bad weather.
- He will never _____ me. I'm a far faster runner.
- After her coffee break, she _____ writing her report.
- Studies _____ by the World Health Organisation indicate that cities are getting much noisier.

B Complete using prepositions.

- We were all shocked _____ the news of the bomb exploding in the city.
- Children are usually frightened _____ the dark.
- All the students were anxious _____ their exam results.
- Ellen was worried _____ her grandmother's health.
- He was puzzled _____ his colleague's unusual behaviour.
- Tom was ashamed _____ what he had done and asked for forgiveness.
- The writer was surprised _____ the critic's review of his book.
- The children are afraid _____ the neighbour's cats.
- Tell me more about the country you come from. I'm curious _____ it.
- Don't be shy _____ having your picture taken.
- She's scared _____ making the wrong decision.
- I'm never jealous _____ people who are wealthy because I'm happy _____ my life.

C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

mention (v): refer to or speak about sth briefly or incidentally

report (v): inform some authority about sth that has happened

express (v): show what you think or feel by saying or doing sth

result (n): the outcome of an action or situation

effect (of sth on sth else) (n): (1) the change that sth causes to sth else
 (2) the power to influence or produce a result

consequence (n): the result or effect of sth (usually unpleasant)

- We decided to _____ the robbery to the police.
- I can't find the words to _____ how I feel.
- How could you forget? I _____ it to you last night.
- Pollution has a very harmful _____ on our health.
- If you don't take our advice, you'll have to face the _____.
- The flight was cancelled as a _____ of heavy snow.

The Future "Will" is used to express:

- a decision one makes at the moment of speaking.
It's getting cold; I'll close the windows.
- predictions or personal opinions about the future, usually with *perhaps* or *probably*, or after the verbs **believe, expect, think, be sure, be afraid**, etc.
I think Arsenal will lose this match.
- requests and offers.
Will you do the ironing for me, please?
I'll take you to the airport tomorrow.
- promises, threats, warnings, hopes, fears, invitation, refusal, willingness, determination.
Stop making so much noise or the neighbours will get angry.

"Be going to" is used to express:

- predictions based on evidence.
The sun is shining; it's going to be a lovely day.
- plans or decisions that have already been made.
I'm going to study archaeology this year.
- *She doesn't like Kate, so she is not going to invite her to her house.*

The Future Progressive is used to express:

- actions that will be in progress at a specific time in the future.
This time tomorrow I'll be flying to Rome.
- future actions which have already been planned or are part of a routine.
The president will be visiting Egypt next month.
Tom won't come with us on Sunday; he will be playing basketball (= he does so every Sunday).
- a polite request about someone's plans, especially if we want to ask for a favour.
Will you be using your computer tomorrow?

Time Expressions

next week/month/year, etc., tomorrow, in a week/month/year, etc.

The Future Perfect Simple is used:

- for actions which will have been completed before a specific point of time in the future or before another action in the future (the verb describing the second action is in the **Present Simple**).
By dinner time I will have written all the letters.

I guess John will have stopped working by the time we arrive.

Time Expressions

by, by the time, before

The Future Perfect Progressive is used:

- to show the duration of an action up to a certain point of time in the future. The action may continue further.
By midnight we will have been flying for seven hours.

Time Expressions

by

note

After the words **after, as long as, as soon as, before, by the time, if, provided, providing, until, while, when**, etc. we use the Present Simple, not the Future "Will".
Give my regards to her when she calls.

We can also use the Present Perfect Simple after the above words to emphasise that an action will be completed in the future.

He'll come as soon as he has finished studying.

Phrases with future meaning

The following expressions indicate that an event will happen very soon.

be (just) about to *They are about to leave.*

be bound to + infinitive *You're bound to get there on time.*

be to *We are to meet tomorrow at 10:00 am.*

be on the point of + -ing *Susan is on the point of collapsing.*

no matter who/what/which/where/when + present tense
whatever/whoever/whenever/wherever *No matter where we go, we'll have a great time.*
Whatever you decide to do, I'll support you.

be due to + infinitive is used for schedules and timetables. *The plane is due to land in half an hour.*

Grammar Practice

A Put the verbs in brackets into the Future "Will", the Future Progressive, the Future Perfect Simple or the Future Perfect Progressive.

- Kathy can't come shopping with us tomorrow morning. She (have) a French lesson.
- Jenny, Ms Kingsley (contact) you as soon as the documents are ready.
you (let) me know when she does?
- At lunchtime tomorrow you (entertain) your friends from Mexico, so I (ring) you later on in the evening.
- you (go) to the city centre by car? I'd really appreciate a lift.
- I (paint) the living room by the time dad comes home. He'll be so surprised!
- I hope I (interview) all the applicants by the time the manager arrives.
- Do you think that they (complete) the construction of the tunnel by the end of this year?
- Call Dan. He (arrive) home by now.
- By the time we reach Gstaad, we (drive) for twelve hours.
- I (study) for three hours by 8:00 pm.



B Choose the correct answers.

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. The plane takes off in half an hour.
due The plane _____ in half an hour.
 2. Her baby will be born in October.
is She _____ a baby in October.
 3. He is to take his driving test tomorrow morning.
be He _____ his driving test tomorrow morning.
 4. I'll come with you wherever you go on holiday.
matter I'll come with you _____ on holiday.
 5. The Tigers are likely to win the Cup Final.
probably The Tigers _____ the Cup Final.
 6. Sam will go scuba diving only if the weather is good.
provided Sam will go scuba diving _____ good.
 7. I will have dinner ready by the time your parents arrive.
prepared I _____ by the time your parents arrive.
 8. She started working here at the end of June, nearly two months ago.
been By the end of August, she _____ here for two months.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

come across: find sth by chance

come along/on: (1) hurry up
(2) encourage sb to do sth

come into: inherit (money, property or a title)

come round: (1) to stop by, visit
(2) recover consciousness

come up with: think of and suggest sth (plan, idea, etc.)

- _____ ! We're going to miss the bus.
- When did Jane _____ this idea? It's perfect!
- If you _____ that book, could you buy it for me?
- Alex _____ a lot of money after his grandfather's death.
- It took the boxer five minutes to _____ after he was knocked out.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

MISSING THE HUSTLE AND BUSTLE

My father was a police (1) _____ and my mother was a primary school (2) _____. They had both grown up in the city and lived there their entire lives. Their (3) _____ to move to a small town when I was a child changed my life. It was a very (4) _____ place and of course living there meant that I had much more (5) _____ to go wherever I pleased. The people all knew each other and were (6) _____ but I missed my close friends, my school and the (7) _____ city I had lived in.

As I grew up, I realised that there wasn't much for a young person to do there, except rush into (8) _____. When I left, my parents were sad, but they realised that staying there would only make me (9) _____.

The big city I live in now is not very far away, so I can visit my parents (10) _____ and have the best of both worlds.

INSPECT

TEACH

DECIDE

PEACE

FREE

FRIEND

NOISE

MARRY

MISERY

FREQUENT

C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

wait (for sb/sth) (v): spend time doing little while expecting sth to happen or sb to arrive

look forward to (doing) sth (v): anticipate with pleasure that sth will happen

expect (v): believe that sth will happen, anticipate

boast of/about sth (v): talk about sth in a way that shows excessive pride

praise sb for sth (v): express approval of or admiration for sb's achievements or qualities

1. What time do you _____ the guests to arrive?

2. I'm _____ visiting Spain.

3. Can you _____ for me, John?

4. People who _____ about their own achievements aren't usually popular.

5. The teacher _____ her students for their good exam results.

Revision 01

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. The meeting will start when everyone _____.
 a. will arrive b. arrives c. is arriving d. will have arrived
2. We _____ Betty since she moved to our neighbourhood.
 a. have known b. had known c. are knowing d. knew
3. The students were tired. They _____ hard all morning.
 a. had been working b. work c. have been working d. have worked
4. By this time next month, the builders _____ the house.
 a. will complete b. will be completing c. will have completed d. will have been completing
5. "This time next week we _____ on the beach!"
 "I can't wait!"
 a. are lying b. will be lying c. will have lain d. will have been lying
6. Mark _____ about my cooking! It's so annoying!
 a. has always complained b. was always complaining c. is always complaining d. had always complained
7. Sue _____ dinner when she heard a knock on the door.
 a. had b. was having c. has been having d. has had
8. By two o'clock, he _____ computer games for three hours. I hope he stops soon!
 a. will have been playing b. will be playing c. has been playing d. is playing
9. Yesterday, I met an old school friend who I _____.
 a. didn't see b. haven't seen c. had seen d. hadn't seen
10. "The phone's ringing!"
 "I _____ it!"
 a. get b. will get c. will be getting d. got
11. Nancy _____ since she came from work.
 a. has been sleeping b. is sleeping c. slept d. had slept
12. Jack _____ his wallet last week.
 a. was losing b. had lost c. has lost d. lost
13. You _____ the salt after the meat is cooked.
 a. are adding b. will add c. add d. have added
14. I _____ two letters so far.
 a. have written b. wrote c. had written d. have been writing
15. When we finally got to the airport, the plane _____.
 a. has already landed b. landed already c. already landed d. had already landed

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Luke first started playing tennis in May.

been Luke _____ May.

2. I had never read a better book by that author.

best It was the _____ read by that author.

3. Scott, is this your wallet?

belong Scott, _____ you?

4. This is Pete's third attempt at climbing Mount Everest.

time This is the _____ to climb Mount Everest.

5. We've arranged to leave by train tomorrow morning.

are We _____ by train tomorrow morning.

6. By the time my friends arrive, I will have dinner ready.

finished By the time my friends arrive, I _____ cooking dinner.

7. It's ages since she last ate spaghetti.

for She _____ ages.

8. They realised that they had taken the wrong turning after driving for an hour.

had They _____ for an hour before they realised that they had taken the wrong turning.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. I couldn't _____ him. He is a fast runner.

- a. come up with b. catch up with c. bring back d. get away

2. When his aunt died, Luke _____ a lot of money.

- a. came along b. came across c. came into d. came round

3. I'm really worried _____ the boys. They haven't come back yet and it's almost midnight.

- a. for b. about c. of d. with

4. Are you afraid _____ the dark?

- a. with b. by c. at d. of

5. We _____ the theft to the insurance company the following morning.

- a. replied b. expressed c. mentioned d. reported

6. I had to _____ Jerry some money as he didn't have any to get home.

- a. let b. lend c. borrow d. gain

7. Samantha is _____ good results in her examination.

- a. looking forward b. expecting c. waiting d. wanting

8. He _____ a lot about the money he makes.

- a. boasts b. praises c. says d. mentions

9. I felt awful when I realised that I couldn't pay for the meal because I had _____ my wallet.

- a. forgotten b. left c. let d. lent

10. Fred started working as a mechanic _____ the age of 20.

- a. with b. from c. at d. by

11. That's a lousy excuse! Couldn't you _____ something better?

- a. break up b. come up with c. carry on d. ask for

12. She _____ the wedding at the last minute.

- a. called off b. carried out c. asked out d. came into

13. A thief _____ our house last month and stole all of my mother's jewellery.
a. broke into b. broke in c. broke down d. broke up

14. You could _____ drive me to my house. It really isn't that far.
a. at last b. at least c. at present d. at the same time

15. I'm _____ seeing Sally again after two years.
a. expecting b. waiting c. looking d. looking forward to

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

- | | |
|--|----------------|
| 1. This is a very _____ grandfather clock. | VALUE |
| 2. Katie's _____ has kept her away from school for a week. | ILL |
| 3. Walking up in the hills gives me a great sense of _____. | FREE |
| 4. A good _____ will last a lifetime. | FRIEND |
| 5. An _____ of the building was made and it was declared safe. | INSPECT |
| 6. _____, we are concerned about our son's progress at school. | NATURE |
| 7. The children were playing _____ in the garden. | NOISE |
| 8. The children looked cold and _____. | MISERY |

C Choose the correct answers.



Last weekend, my friend Peter and I decided to take a road trip. (1) _____, we were going to take Peter's car, but it had (2) _____ a couple of days before. As a(n) (3) _____, we decided to (4) _____ one for 30 dollars a day. We both took Monday off from (5) _____, so that we could have a full four days. Our goal was to drive from New York to Washington D.C., and back. The trip itself was great. The weather was beautiful, and we (6) _____ many interesting places along the way. There was a lot to (7) _____ in

Washington, so we spent two days there. The sad thing was that I had forgotten my camera, even though Peter had specifically (8) _____ that he didn't have one to bring along. So, we bought lots of postcards to remind us of our trip. Even though we arrived back a bit tired on Monday night, the trip was well worth it!

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. a. At present
b. At first
c. At least
d. At most | 4. a. hire
b. lend
c. let
d. buy | 7. a. look
b. notice
c. see
d. watch |
| 2. a. broken up
b. broken into
c. broken in
d. broken down | 5. a. job
b. task
c. work
d. duty | 8. a. mentioned
b. reported
c. expressed
d. told |
| 3. a. result
b. consequence
c. effect
d. reason | 6. a. came across
b. came along
c. came into
d. came round | |

unit | 05 | Infinitive

Infinitive Forms

Time Reference	Forms	Active	Passive
Present / Future	Present Infinitive, simple	(to) give	(to) be given
	Present Infinitive, progressive	(to) be giving	—
Past	Perfect Infinitive, simple	(to) have given	(to) have been given
	Perfect Infinitive, progressive	(to) have been giving	—

note

Negative Form: not + infinitive

Full Infinitive (to + infinitive)

The full infinitive is used:	Examples
1. to express purpose	<i>She went to the post office to collect her parcel.</i>
2. after certain verbs (as their object):	<i>She pretended not to have seen Carol. Unemployment levels tend to rise in summer. They volunteered to help us.</i>
afford decide hesitate plan seem agree demand hope prepare swear appear deserve learn pretend tend arrange expect manage promise threaten ask fail mean refuse volunteer beg forget need regret want, claim happen offer remember etc.	
3. after the object of certain verbs:	<i>My friend invited me to join them. They persuaded him to go out with them.</i>
advise challenge force order teach allow convince hire permit tell ask encourage instruct persuade urge beg expect invite remind want cause forbid need require warn, etc.	
note Help + object can take either a full or bare infinitive. <i>Could you help me (to) pack my suitcases?</i>	
4. after verbs followed by a question word (who, what, which, where, how, but not why):	<i>Have you decided where to spend your holidays? Do you remember what to buy? Could you show me how to use your computer?</i>
ask forget remember understand decide know show wonder, etc. explain learn tell	
5. after certain adjectives :	<i>Jack was relieved to hear his son was out of danger. You have to be careful not to say anything insulting.</i>
afraid careful lucky relieved surprised amazed determined pleased sad upset anxious glad prepared shocked willing, etc. astonished happy ready sorry	

6. after: would like, would love, would prefer	<i>I would prefer to be on holiday instead of working.</i>
7. after: the first/second/next/last/best , etc., instead of a relative clause	<i>If anything happens, you'll be the first to know. Joan was the last to hear about the accident.</i>
8. after certain nouns (pleasure, shock, etc.)	<i>It was a great pleasure to meet you.</i>
9. after some, any, no and their compounds	<i>I'll make you something to eat. He doesn't have anywhere to stay.</i>
10. after the following structures: • it + be + adjective (+ of/for + object) • so + adjective + as , in formal or polite requests	<i>It's very comforting to listen to your voice. It was very kind of her to call. It is necessary for him to have a rest. Would you be so kind as to help me with these suitcases?</i>
11. with too/enough : too + adjective/adverb } negative meaning enough + noun } positive meaning adjective/adverb + enough	<i>This shirt is too large for me to wear. This shirt is large enough for me to wear.</i>
12. after only , for emphasis or expressing disappointment	<i>He passed the written test only to fail the oral exam.</i>
13. at the beginning of the sentence: as a subject or in fixed expressions (to be honest, to tell you the truth, to begin with, etc.)	<i>To lend money is a risky business. To be honest, I didn't want to meet him.</i>

Bare Infinitive (infinitive without to)

The bare infinitive is used:

	Examples
1. after most modal verbs (can/could, may/might, will/would, shall/should, must, etc.)	<i>You should wake up earlier in the morning.</i>
2. after: would rather, would sooner, had better	<i>Jane would rather go to California by plane. You'd better hurry up. We're late again!</i>
3. after the verbs hear, let, listen to, make, notice, see, watch , etc. These verbs (except for <i>let</i>) take the full infinitive in the passive voice.	<i>Will you let me go to Jake's house tonight? She heard him come in. He was seen to open the door. He was made to do some extra work.</i>
4. In the following structures: Why...? / Why not...? (for suggestions and advice) do + { anything / everything } + { but / except } + infinitive	<i>Why not have another cup of coffee? Why walk when I could give you a lift? My son does nothing all day but play computer games.</i>

Perfect Infinitive

The perfect infinitive refers to actions or events that have already finished.

The perfect infinitive is used:

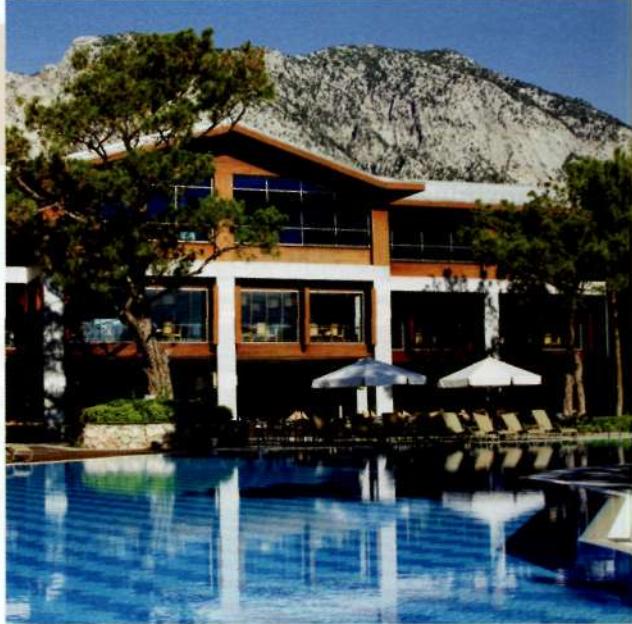
	Examples
1. with modal verbs (could, would, may, might, must, etc.)	<i>He could have studied more, but he didn't.</i>
2. after verbs such as: appear, claim, expect, hope, happen, pretend, promise, seem , etc.	<i>He appears to have left the country.</i>
3. after certain verbs in the passive voice (personal construction): believe say think consider suppose understand, etc.	<i>The reporter is believed to have met the Prime Minister secretly.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

B Circle the correct answers.

1. The Johnsons seem to **be having / have had** a great time at the Wyatt resort, where they are staying this summer.
 2. He doesn't need — / **to** be given any more medicine.
 3. Jack is willing to **be volunteering / volunteer** his services at the fundraising event.
 4. I failed to **arrive / have arrived** at the meeting on time.
 5. It was a shock to **learn / be learning** that she had been missing for three months.
 6. The robbers were made — / **to** give themselves up.
 7. He was surprised to **have awarded / have been awarded** a medal for bravery.
 8. I'm always the last **to** / — find out about anything in this office.
 9. The police warned the crowd **to not / not to** approach the building.
 10. He might **to** / — be promoted next year.



C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. It seems that Mike isn't enjoying himself tonight.

appears Mike _____ himself tonight.

2. At the wedding, she was constantly gossiping about the other guests.

nothing At the wedding, she _____ about the other guests.

3. Learning that no one was hurt during the fire was a great relief.

relieved We _____ that no one was hurt during the fire.

4. When they arrived at the airport, they discovered that they had left their tickets at home.

only They arrived at the airport _____ that they had left their tickets at home.

5. The kidnappers forced the man to get into the car.

made The kidnappers _____ the car.

6. Dr Thompson studied the symptoms of the disease before anyone else did.

first Dr Thompson _____ the symptoms of the disease.

7. People say that he has travelled the world.

said He _____ the world.

8. Neither of them was old enough to have a driving licence.

too Both of them _____ a driving licence.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

get along/on

(with sb):

form or have a friendly relationship with sb

get away:

escape

get away with:

go unpunished for doing sth wrong or risky

get by:

continue to live in spite of difficulties

get off:

(1) take yourself off a horse or bike (2) leave a plane, train, boat, etc.

get on:

(1) place yourself on a horse or bike (2) enter a plane, train, boat, etc.

get on with:

continue doing sth, especially after an interruption or in spite of difficulties

get over:

(1) recover from an illness (2) overcome a problem

1. I find it difficult to _____ on the money I earn.

2. Bruce is very easy-going and can _____ with anyone.

3. It took Sue two weeks to _____ the flu.

4. If I don't _____ this work, I'll never finish it.

5. Joe ran as fast as he could and managed to _____ the bus just before it left.

6. The thief _____ before the police arrived.

7. Sam, could you help your little brother _____ his bike? He doesn't want to ride it any more!

8. She always _____ not doing any housework! It's just not fair!

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

for ages: for a very long time

for a change: doing sth different than usual

(take sth/sb)

for granted: accept sth as normal without thinking about it

for hire/sale: available to be hired, rented/available to be sold

for a while: for a short period of time

1. The house was _____, so we decided to buy it.
2. Red is not a colour I would usually wear, but I think I'll buy that red shirt _____.
3. We haven't seen the Johnsons _____! More than ten years, I think.
4. I'll be gone _____. You won't have to wait long for me.
5. Nowadays, many children take everything _____.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

THE ART OF ADVERTISING

In our (1) _____ whether at home, in the car or at work we are constantly bombarded by (2) _____. Their role is to grab our attention and make products (3) _____ enough so that people will want to buy them (4) _____.

There has been a lot of (5) _____ on the powerful effects of advertising. Are ads really (6) _____ to us? Some would ask if the adverts are (7) _____. Do they give us a fair and (8) _____ idea of the product? People are rarely in (9) _____ on any of these questions, but the fact is that ads are (10) _____ in letting people know the wide variety of goods available.

LIVE

ADVERTISE

ATTRACT

IMMEDIATE

DISCUSS

USE

TRUE

REAL

AGREE

HELP

D Complete using the words given.

debt (n): amount of money that you owe to a person or a bank

loan (n): money that you borrow (usually from a bank)

donation (n): contribution to a charity or other organisation

fine (n): punishment in which sb has to pay a sum of money because they have done sth wrong or broken a rule

charge (n): amount of money sb has to pay for a service or to buy sth

tip (n): extra money given to sb (eg. a waiter, porter, etc.) in order to thank them for their service

change (n): (1) coins (2) money that you receive when you pay for sth with more money than it costs because you do not have the exact amount of money

currency (n): the money used in a particular country

profit (n): money sb gains when they are paid more for sth than it costs them to make, get or do

income (n): money sb earns or receives

bill (n): a written statement of money that you owe for goods or services

receipt (n): a piece of paper that you get from sb as confirmation that they have received money or goods from you

1. The magistrate imposed a £100 _____ on the man for throwing litter on the street.
2. The _____ Sandra earns allows her to live very comfortably.
3. I like to make _____ to worthwhile causes.
4. Do you make a large _____ on the jewellery you sell?
5. If I don't get good service in a restaurant, I never leave a _____.
6. Come back, sir! You forgot your _____.
7. The Jones took out a _____ to buy a new car.
8. There's no extra _____ for delivery.
9. What _____ is used in Austria?
10. The national _____ is always increasing and as a result the cost of living rises.
11. I must pay this electricity _____ by next week.
12. Make sure you get a _____ for the furniture you buy.

unit | 06 | -ing form

-ing forms

	Form	Affirmative	Negative
Present	verb + -ing	<i>giving</i>	<i>not giving</i>
Perfect	having + past participle	<i>having given</i>	<i>not having given</i>

Use

The **-ing form** is used:

1. as a **noun** (subject or object of a verb)

Examples

Swimming is a very good form of exercise.

I have some shopping to do this afternoon.

2. after a **preposition or verb + preposition**

Touch your toes without bending your knees.

Helen is excited about studying abroad.

3. after certain **verbs** (as their object):

admit	dislike	mention	recall
appreciate	enjoy	mind	recommend
avoid	fancy	miss	resent
consider	finish	postpone	resist
delay	imagine	practise	risk
deny	involve	prefer	suggest
discuss	keep (on)	quit	tolerate, etc.

Tony dislikes driving small cars.

Would you mind waiting for a moment?

Have you finished reading that book?

He avoided answering my question.

• **prefer** can also take a full infinitive:

prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive

*I prefer swimming to playing football.
(general preference)*

I'd prefer to stay at home tonight. (specific preference)

I prefer to start exercising rather than go on a diet.

Would you mind if I opened the door?

He never admitted that he was wrong.

• **mind** can also go with an if-clause

Some of these verbs can also take a that-clause.

4. after verbs or expressions with **to**:

be/get accustomed to	look forward to
be/get used to	object to
in addition to	take to

The children were not used to living in the country.

They are looking forward to travelling abroad.

5. after certain **expressions**:

as well as	it's no good/use
be in favour of	it's worth
can't stand/help	there's no chance of
feel like	there's no point in
have difficulty (in)	what's the point of...?
how about	what's the use of...?

As well as taking pictures, he likes drawing.

I don't feel like going out tonight.

She can't help crying whenever she peels onions.

6. after the verbs **need, want, require**, etc. with a passive meaning

My car needs repairing. (= My car needs to be repaired.)

7. after the verb **go**, indicating physical activities

We are planning to go skiing this weekend.

catch	—
find	+ object
leave	—

She caught him stealing some money from the drawer.

I found her sleeping on the sofa.

They left me waiting in the rain for half an hour.

9. after: **be busy**

spend/waste + expression of money/time

She is busy feeding the baby.

Every day they spend two hours studying French.

You shouldn't waste your time playing computer games.

Infinitive or -ing form with no difference in meaning

- The verbs **like, love, hate, begin, start, continue, intend, prefer, can't bear**, etc. can take either a full infinitive or -ing with little or no difference in meaning:
Tim loves playing/to play tennis.

notes

- **like + -ing:** we enjoy something.
Mary likes reading poetry.
- **like + full infinitive:** we think that something is a good idea.
I like to have my tyres checked whenever I buy petrol.
- **begin, start:** usually the -ing form goes with simple tenses and the infinitive with progressive tenses (to avoid having two -ing forms together).
It started raining an hour ago. *Be quiet! The lecturer is beginning to speak!*
- **advise, allow, encourage, permit, require +** -ing object + full infinitive
The manager does not allow eating in the office.
The manager does not allow anyone to eat in the office.

Infinitive or -ing form with different meanings

- Some other verbs can take either -ing or infinitive, but the meaning is different.

try + -ing: make an experiment.

If you want to get rid of your sore throat, try drinking something hot.

remember

forget

regret

+ -ing We refer to something that has already happened.

I remember visiting Berlin in 1982.

go on + -ing: the action continues.

He was so fascinated by the book that he went on reading it for hours.

stop + -ing: the action was stopped and not repeated.

They had a major argument and stopped talking to each other.

see

hear

smell

feel

notice

watch

observe

listen to, etc.

+ -ing

For actions which are incomplete or still in progress.

I was walking past the reception hall when I saw him talking on the phone. (= I witnessed a part of the action.)

smell: can take only an -ing form.

He could smell something burning.

try + full infinitive: make an effort.

I'll try to persuade her to come with us, but I don't think she will change her mind.

remember

forget

regret

We remember/forget

+ full infinitive regret something before doing it.

Don't forget to go to the supermarket.

go on + full infinitive: the action changes.

When she finished school, she went on to study Medicine.

stop + full infinitive: the action was interrupted, but probably continued afterwards.

I was writing a letter, but I stopped to answer the phone.

see

hear

feel

watch

listen to

notice, etc.

+ bare infinitive For complete actions.

We saw him talk on the phone during the meeting.

(= I witnessed the whole action, from the beginning to the end.)

notes

- The subject of the -ing form can be different from the subject of the verb. In this case, it can be a **noun, an object pronoun, a possessive adjective** or a **noun in the possessive case**.

Andy objected to Michael/him/his/Michael's going on holiday to Japan.

- **excuse, forgive, pardon, prevent, understand** + possessive adjective + -ing form
Forgive my being so fussy, but everything has to be perfect.

- **prevent** + possessive adjective/case + -ing
sb + from + doing sth

She tried to prevent his/her son's buying a new car.

She tried to prevent her son from buying a new car.

Grammar Practice

A Complete using the -ing form or the infinitive of the verbs in brackets.

1. It was Mr Kent who suggested Mike's _____ (study) abroad.
2. You don't expect me _____ (believe) that you actually met the prime minister, do you?
3. The board of directors discussed the project, then went on _____ (discuss) another topic.
4. Why continue _____ (work) there if you don't like your job?
5. He regrets _____ (not go) to see his grandfather in Paris.
6. It's worth _____ (shop) at Stacey's, as it's very cheap.
7. My doctor doesn't permit me _____ (eat) red meat.
8. Greg would rather _____ (spend) the holidays _____ (ski) than _____ (sunbathe) on a beach somewhere.
9. I was driving home when I noticed some workers _____ (put up) new traffic lights on Coronation Street.
10. Anyone can _____ (get) used to _____ (live) a life of luxury.
11. Will you quit _____ (complain)! You're not helping _____ (solve) the problem.
12. If you ever decide _____ (sell) your car, let me _____ (know).
13. I would like you _____ (water) the plants for me at the weekend.
14. I clearly remember _____ (set) my alarm clock before _____ (go) to bed last night.
15. These plants require _____ (water) every day.
16. I resent you _____ (speak) to me like that! Have some respect!
17. It would be good for the children _____ (play) outdoors more often.
18. I promised _____ (take) Jill to the airport, but I don't feel like _____ (go) now.
19. Don't waste your time _____ (look for) the document. Ask Mr Gale.
20. Please excuse his _____ (leave) so early. He wants _____ (catch up) with his _____ (study).

B Choose the sentence closest in meaning to the one given.

1. Even though the telephone rang, he went on working on his computer.
 - a. He didn't continue to work on his computer after the telephone rang.
 - b. He continued to work on his computer despite the fact that the telephone was ringing.
 - c. He worked on his computer until the telephone rang.
 2. Jane forgot to put a stamp on the letter before she sent it.
 - a. Jane doesn't remember whether she put a stamp on the letter or not.
 - b. Jane put a stamp on the letter but she doesn't remember doing so.
 - c. Jane didn't put a stamp on the letter because she didn't remember to do so.
 3. Carl regrets selling his car.
 - a. Carl decided not to sell his car because it would be a mistake.
 - b. Carl may not sell his car.
 - c. Carl sold his car but now thinks it was a mistake.
4. We stopped to buy some flowers before visiting the Johnsons.
 - a. We bought some flowers on our way to the Johnsons.
 - b. We no longer buy any flowers before visiting the Johnsons.
 - c. We didn't buy any flowers before visiting the Johnsons.
 5. Charlie couldn't sleep last night, so he tried reading a book but it didn't help.
 - a. Charlie made an effort to read a book but he couldn't.
 - b. Charlie thought reading a book might help him fall asleep but he was wrong.
 - c. Charlie read a book and fell asleep.

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- It wasn't easy for her to find a place to stay on the island.
difficulty She _____ a place to stay on the island.
- I can't wait to tell Karen the good news.
forward I'm _____ Karen the good news.
- When they arrived home, their cat was sleeping on the sofa.
found When they arrived home, _____ on the sofa.
- The teacher doesn't permit eating in the classroom.
anyone The teacher doesn't _____ in the classroom.
- He never went to the gym again after he had a fight with the owner.
stopped He _____ after he had a fight with the owner.
- The boys said that they hadn't broken the window.
denied The boys _____ the window.
- He continued to interrupt me although I had told him to stop.
kept He _____ although I had told him to stop.
- The police will prevent his leaving the country.
from The police _____ the country.

D Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

give away:	(1) reveal information or tell a secret (2) give sth to sb free of charge
give back:	return sth you have borrowed or taken
give in:	(1) admit that you are defeated (2) do sth you didn't want to
give out:	distribute some things among a number of people
give up:	(1) quit an effort/an activity (2) resign from your job

- At the end of the year, the students had to _____ all the books they had borrowed from the library.
- Oliver kept annoying his parents until they _____ to his demands.
- The rescue team _____ the search when it got dark.
- The chocolate company were _____ free chocolate bars during the promotion of their new product.
- Make sure you don't _____ our hideout to anyone.

B Complete using prepositions.

- You shouldn't laugh _____ other people's misfortunes.
- My family were very proud _____ me when I won a scholarship to Oxford.
- Jenny is keen _____ Chinese food and cooks it at least twice a week.
- She is so fond _____ her cat that if anything happened to it, she'd be devastated.
- I'm very excited _____ my new job.
- Dave is interested _____ ancient Greek art, so he's thinking of taking a course in it.
- That boy is smiling _____ us. Do you know him?
- He has developed an interest _____ computers lately.
- Stop joking _____ such a serious subject!
- Are you pleased _____ the service provided by the staff?

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

SOMEONE TO WATCH US

There has been a significant fall in the (1) _____ of the police in the last few years. That's why this week a public relations campaign is being launched to make people more (2) _____ to the role of the police officer. The ads will stress that police do more than just give (3) _____ speeding tickets. They often act as unofficial social workers, visit schools and talk to students, familiarising them with traffic signs and warning them of (4) _____ dangers. Being a police officer can be extremely (5) _____, considering that every day they deal with all sorts of (6) _____, such as thieves and even (7) _____. They deal with situations most of us would find really scary. In (8) _____, the campaign wants to make the public realise that even though in some cases the police's approach may seem extreme, they cannot ignore the (9) _____ of injury or, in some cases, even (10) _____ while on duty.

POPULAR

SENSE

MOTOR

VARY

RISK

CRIME

MURDER

CONCLUDE

POSSIBLE

DIE

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

crew (n): people who work on a ship or aircraft

staff (n): people who work for a company or organisation, employees

team (n): group of people who work together or play a particular sport or game together

employee (n): a person who is paid to work for an organisation or for another person

colleague (n): a person you work with (at a professional job)

client (n): a person or organisation that receives a service from a professional person or another organisation in return for money

customer (n): a person who buys goods or services, especially from a shop

guest (n): sb who is visiting you or is at an event because they have been invited

host (n): sb who receives or entertains guests

visitor (n): sb who is visiting a person or a place

1. The hospital _____ are on strike today.

2. I work for a law firm which has a lot of business people as _____.

3. My _____ played well but we lost the game.

4. I always buy my groceries from this shop. I am a regular _____ here, so I expect good service.

5. There weren't many people on the plane; just the ten of us and the _____.

6. Whenever I need help at work, I can always rely on my _____.

7. Employers often complain that they can't find reliable _____.

8. All _____ entering the factory must wear this card.

9. We had _____ staying with us for ten days.

10. Our _____ provided us with a delicious meal.



07 Modal Verbs I

The modal verbs are: **can, could, may, might, must, will, would, shall, should, need, have to, ought to**, used to. Need may also be used as a main verb.

Modal verbs do not have all tense forms and:

- are followed by a bare infinitive (present or perfect) except for **need** (when it is used as a main verb).
- have the same form in all persons, except **have to** and **need** (when it is used as a main verb).
- form questions and negations without auxiliary verbs, except **have to, used to** and **need** (when it is used as a main verb).

You shouldn't leave children alone at home.

You should have answered the phone.

He needs to see the doctor.

He must call the plumber immediately.

Your car needs to be repaired/repairing.

Can he repair his car?

He cannot/can't repair his car.

Do you have to see the doctor tomorrow?

He doesn't need to get up early every day.

Modal verbs have several meanings and uses.

A. Ability

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
Can Be able to	Ability in the present or future. Can is more commonly used for the present.	<i>Can you use a computer?</i> <i>Eric will be able to play tennis after he has had some lessons.</i>
Could Was/were able to	Could expresses general ability in the past. Was/were able to express ability in a particular situation in the past. • Both can be used in negative sentences with no difference in meaning. • If the action was very difficult, we can use managed to instead of was/were able to .	<i>He could swim at the age of five.</i> <i>George could swim, so he was able to save the boy from drowning.</i> <i>He had a terrible accident but managed to survive.</i>

note

Perfect and future tenses are formed only with **be able to**.

Neil hasn't been able to find a job yet.

I think Steve will be able to pick you up from the airport.

B. Possibility

Modal verbs	Use	Examples	
can could may might	+ present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Possibility in the present or future. • Can is used when something is only sometimes possible.	<i>Tina may/could/might (not) be at home now.</i> <i>George could be working late tonight.</i> <i>My brother can be very rude sometimes.</i>
could may might	+ perfect infinitive (simple or progressive)	Possibility in the past. • In negative sentences only may not and might not can be used to express possibility in the past (not could not).	<i>She could have left her umbrella in the classroom.</i> <i>I'm surprised to hear that Jim was not at the competition. He might not have known about it.</i>
could might	+ perfect infinitive	For an event that was possible in the past but did not eventually happen.	<i>Be careful! You could have crashed into that tree!</i>

note

Possibility can also be expressed with **be likely to**.

Mary is likely to arrive late.

It is likely that Mary will arrive late.

May and **might** expressing possibility cannot introduce interrogative sentences; **Do you think...?** and **Is it likely...?** are used instead.

Do you think she might be at home?

Is it likely that she is still at home?

C. Probability

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
should ought to [] + present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Probability in the present or future.	<i>There are plenty of flats available for rent in town. It should/ought to be easy enough to find a place to live.</i>
should ought to [] + perfect infinitive (simple or progressive)	Something was expected to happen in the past, but either didn't happen or it is not certain if it happened.	<i>She has been working very efficiently lately; she should/ought to have been promoted.</i>

D. Deduction

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
must + present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Positive deduction about the present or future. (We are fairly sure that something is true.)	<i>John must be at the dentist's; he was complaining about a toothache.</i>
can't + present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Negative deduction about the present or future. (We are almost certain that something is not true.)	<i>The 6:30 pm train to Liverpool can't be leaving yet; it's only 6:10 pm.</i>
must + perfect infinitive (simple or progressive)	Positive deduction about the past.	<i>I can't find my glasses; I must have left them at the office.</i>
can't couldn't [] + perfect infinitive (simple or progressive)	Negative deduction about the past.	<i>He can't/couldn't have been working yesterday; he was ill.</i>

E. Permission

Asking for permission

Can I (possibly)...?

Could I...?

May I...?

Might I...?

Informal

↓
Formal

Synonymous expressions

I wonder if I could/might...

Is it all right if I...?

Would it be possible for me to...?

Do/Would you mind if I...?

F. Requests

	Modal Verbs	Examples
Informal	can will	<i>Can you help me with the ironing? Will you please give me a lift to the airport?</i>
Polite/Formal	could, may would	<i>Could/May I have some coffee, please? Would you pass me the salt, please?</i>

Grammar Practice

A Complete using *can*, *can't*, *may*, *may not* or *must*.

1. _____ you lend me your dictionary, please? I really need it.
 2. Ryan is eighteen months old. Now that he _____ walk, I have to watch out for him all the time!
 3. Roger _____ come to the park with us because he has a lot of studying to do.
 4. Frank _____ have bought a car. I saw him driving past my house this morning.
 5. "I'm surprised that John didn't answer the door. I rang the doorbell many times."
"He _____ have been sleeping."
 6. _____ I play a game on your computer?
 7. They _____ have walked all the way to town. It's too far!
 8. _____ I have some more coffee, please?
 9. They _____ afford to rent a summer house this year, so they've decided to go camping instead.
 10. "I've got a temperature and a sore throat."
"Oh, you _____ be feeling awful!"

B Choose the correct answers.

1. Samantha _____ asleep because there's no light on in her room.
a. must be b. can be c. can't be
 2. I might _____ the test but I'm not sure. I haven't received the results yet.
a. pass b. have been passed c. have passed
 3. _____ I use your phone? I need to make an urgent phone call.
a. Would b. Will c. Can
 4. Tom is a talented artist. He should _____ the competition.
a. won b. have won c. to win
 5. You _____ have asked me first before you invited them.
a. could b. may c. must
 6. Don't make any plans for Tuesday because we _____ leave in the morning. I'll let you know tonight.
a. can b. may c. would
 7. Martha _____ have left. The lights in her house are on.
a. can't b. shouldn't c. needn't
 8. Mike leaves work at 3:00 pm, so he _____ be home by now.
a. can b. should c. would

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. There is a possibility that they won't visit us at the weekend.
might They _____ at the weekend.

2. I'm sure it wasn't Tim who called you because I saw him outside.
been It _____ Tim who called you because I saw him outside.

3. I think you'll find the house easily, as the directions are quite clear.
ought The directions are quite clear, so you _____ the house easily.

4. I suppose Bruce has gone to the dentist since he had a terrible toothache.
have Bruce _____ to the dentist since he had a terrible toothache.

5. It's frustrating when you can't communicate with foreigners.

able It's frustrating when you _____ with foreigners.

6. Perhaps you didn't buy that watch from this shop.

could You _____ that watch from another shop.

7. Gary couldn't remember where he had put his wallet.

was Gary _____ where he had put his wallet.

8. Karen, I'd like you to help me with the washing-up.

will Karen, _____ with the washing-up?

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the phrasal verbs given.

count on: rely on sb

cut down (on): reduce the consumption of sth

cut off: (1) stop providing sth
(2) interrupt (e.g. a telephone conversation)

cut up: cut sth into several smaller pieces

end up: eventually arrive somewhere or find yourself in a situation, usually without planning to

1. We hadn't paid the bill, so our water supply was _____.

2. I'm afraid I'll _____ failing my exams if I don't study harder.

3. I can never _____ my brother for help in times of emergency.

4. The doctor told the diabetic patient to _____ on sugar.

5. The small boy's mother _____ his food into small pieces to enable him to eat it easily.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

by accident: not intentionally

by air/rail/ road/sea: travelling via that route

by bus/car/ plane/boat: travelling using a particular means of transport

by chance: unexpectedly, not planning to

by cheque: payment by means of cheque, not using cash

by force: using violent action

by heart: when you learn sth so well that you can remember it without having to read it

by mistake: in error

by oneself: alone; without help

by phone/post: using that particular means of communication

1. I don't have any cash on me, so I'll have to pay you _____.

2. When I feel depressed, I like to sit _____ and read a book.

3. The boys went across the lake _____.

4. I picked up the wrong keys _____ and couldn't get into the office.

5. The villagers wouldn't surrender, so the enemy soldiers took the village _____.

6. The advertisement says that you can order the book either _____ or _____.

7. I learnt the poem off _____ to say at our end-of-year celebrations.

8. Paul found the lost document completely _____.

9. When my brother bought his new car, he travelled everywhere _____ only.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

DON'T GIVE UP HOPE!

The economic crisis facing many countries today has created (1) _____ problems. (2) _____ young people, willing to work, are confronted by many (3) _____ when trying to find a job. Filling in countless (4) _____ forms can be time-consuming and hearing that they are (5) _____ for the job because they don't have the right (6) _____ can be very disheartening. For some, finding a job can seem (7) _____. However, they shouldn't give up and should try to deal with the (8) _____ in a constructive way. There is no straightforward (9) _____ other than to be persistent and have a lot of (10) _____.

EMPLOY
ENERGY
DIFFICULT
APPLY
SUIT
QUALIFY
POSSIBLE
DISAPPOINT
SOLVE
PATIENT

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

travel (v)(n):	going from one place to another
trip (n):	a short journey to a place (and back again)
tour (n):	an organised trip during which you visit different places
voyage (n):	a journey by ship or spacecraft
cruise (n):	a holiday during which you travel on a ship
flight (n):	a journey by plane
journey (n):	a long trip, travelling from one place to another
route (n):	the way from one place to another



- Our business _____ to Brussels was productive and very pleasant.
- What's the quickest _____ from your house to the city centre?
- As soon as they arrived, they went on a _____ of the city.
- At the airport they told us that the _____ to Rome had been cancelled.
- Instead of going to an island, we decided to go on a luxury _____ around the Mediterranean.
- People say that the safest and quickest way to _____ is by aeroplane.
- The _____ from Boston to Montreal by car takes around five hours.
- The old captain had spent his life making _____ to the Far East.

08 Modal Verbs II

A. Offers

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
will	To be willing to do something for someone else.	<i>I'll make you a sandwich if you are hungry.</i>
Will (you)...?	Informal offers and invitations.	<i>Will you have some tea?</i>
can could Can I...? Could I...? Shall I...? (= do you want me to...)	To offer to do something for someone else.	<i>I can / could lend you my umbrella. Is there anything I could do to help? Can I take your coat? Shall I post this letter for you?</i>
Would you like } + noun prefer } full infinitive Would you rather + bare infinitive	Polite or formal offers and invitations.	<i>Would you like some coffee? Would you like me to help? Would you prefer to stay here with us? Would you rather have a cheese sandwich?</i>

B. Suggestions

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
can	Informal suggestions	<i>We can go out tonight, if you like.</i>
shall could	Polite or formal suggestions	<i>Shall we go shopping tomorrow? We could go for a swim in the afternoon.</i>

note

Suggestions can also be expressed by:

Let's + bare infinitive: *Let's play tennis.*

Why don't...?: *Why don't we go for a walk?*

How about + [] noun: *How about some more coffee?*

-ing form: *How about having a pizza for dinner?*

C. Advice

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
shall	To ask for advice.	<i>Shall I dye my hair?</i>
should } + present infinitive ought to } + (simple or progressive)	To ask for and give advice. To say what is generally right or wrong.	<i>I think you ought to see a doctor. You shouldn't be playing now; you should be studying.</i>
had better + bare infinitive	To give strong advice; it often expresses a threat or warning and is stronger than should/ought to.	<i>You'd better not argue with him. He'd better study harder if he wants to pass the exam.</i>
should } + perfect infinitive ought to } + (simple or progressive)	Something should have been done but did not eventually happen.	<i>You shouldn't have lied to your parents. They ought to have informed us earlier.</i>

D. Habits

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
used to	For past habits and situations that are no longer true. • Interrogative and negative sentences are formed with did .	<i>As a child, she used to be very difficult.</i> <i>Did they use to go fishing every Sunday?</i> <i>He didn't use to be so lazy.</i>
would + present infinitive	To describe past habits or a person's typical behaviour in the past.	<i>My grandmother would give me a bar of chocolate whenever I visited her.</i>
will	To describe a person's typical behaviour at present.	<i>When John is sad, he will eat all day.</i>

E. Obligation - Necessity

Modal verbs	Use	Examples				
must	Internal obligation: the speaker feels that he or someone else is obliged to do something.	<i>I must repair the roof before winter comes.</i> <i>You must get up early tomorrow.</i>				
have to have got to	External obligation: it comes from facts, not from the speaker's opinion or feelings. • have (got) to can be used with adverbs of frequency.	<i>Policemen have to wear a uniform. (regulation)</i> <i>I've got to see my dentist tomorrow. (I have an appointment)</i> <i>Do you often have to work at weekends?</i>				
need + <table border="0" style="margin-left: 20px;"><tr><td>noun</td></tr><tr><td>-ing form</td></tr><tr><td>full infinitive</td></tr><tr><td>bare infinitive</td></tr></table>	noun	-ing form	full infinitive	bare infinitive	Necessity • When need is a main verb, interrogative and negative sentences are formed with do/did .	<i>She needs a new pair of gloves.</i> <i>This room needs painting.</i> <i>Do I need to take an umbrella?</i> <i>Need I take an umbrella?</i>
noun						
-ing form						
full infinitive						
bare infinitive						
ought to	We remind someone of a duty or obligation.	<i>You ought to post these letters today.</i>				

note

Must is used only for the present; for the past and the future we use the forms of **have to**, expressing either internal or external obligation.

He had to leave earlier yesterday.
They will soon have to tell him the truth.

F. Absence of necessity

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
don't have to haven't got to needn't don't need to	It is not necessary to do something.	<i>I don't have to/haven't got to cook dinner tonight; we are going to a restaurant.</i> <i>You needn't take your jacket. It isn't cold.</i> <i>He doesn't need to work that hard.</i>
needn't + perfect infinitive	Something was not necessary but it was done.	<i>You needn't have bought any magazines; I've got plenty.</i>
didn't need to + infinitive	Something was not necessary, and it is not clear if it was done or not.	<i>They didn't need to pay anything extra for the tour.</i>

G. Prohibition

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
mustn't can't	Prohibition Not being allowed to do something.	<i>You mustn't enter this room.</i> <i>We can't use this equipment.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Complete the sentences using **can**, **should**, **would**, **mustn't**, **have to** or **don't have to**.

1. You _____ talk on your mobile phone during take-off.
 2. _____ you like some more tea?
 3. I'm afraid we _____ cancel our skiing trip.
 4. _____ I get you a glass of water?
 5. You _____ do any cooking as I've already prepared something.
 6. You _____ have told her the truth earlier. She wouldn't have been so angry.
 7. I was a very good student and I _____ always do my homework.
 8. We _____ go swimming if you like. It's warm today.

B Circle the correct answers.

1. **Mary:** The children **must / need** new sports shoes, but I don't have time to go shopping.
Gary: I **will / would** take them shopping if you want.
 2. You **shouldn't / mustn't** have been driving so carelessly! You could have killed someone.
 3. **Mike:** Bill likes computer games. He **would / will** sit in front of his computer for hours.
Liam: Yes, but you **ought to / shall** encourage him to take up other activities as well.
 4. **Tom:** I **need / must** hurry. I don't want to miss the bus and keep Stan waiting.
Jack: You **mustn't / needn't** go by bus. I **could / should** drive you there if you like.
 5. **Ian:** **Why don't / How about** we buy him a silk tie?
Steve: No, he doesn't wear ties. We **would / can** always get him a nice shirt, though.
 6. All the employees in this company **had to / must** work overtime every day next week.
 7. With a temperature like that, you **should / need** be in bed. You **needn't / shouldn't** be playing outside!
 8. I'm sorry, sir, but you **mustn't / can't** see Dr Brown today. You **have to / need** have an appointment.
Is Tuesday afternoon OK?
 9. They **needn't / didn't need** to buy any more bread. There was plenty at home.
 10. **Oliver:** I **didn't need to / didn't use to** exercise regularly, but now that I have more free time, I do.

C Choose the correct answers

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. You were wrong to drive through the red light.

should You _____ through the red light.

2. Our children were never in the habit of telling lies.

used Our children _____ lies.

3. Taking photographs inside the museum is strictly prohibited.

not You _____ inside the museum.

4. You are not obliged to come if you have something else to do.

have You _____ if you have something else to do.

5. Shall I do the shopping for you?

like Would _____ the shopping for you?

6. It wasn't necessary for you to wake up so early.

need You _____ so early.

7. If I were you, I wouldn't borrow his camera without asking.

better You _____ his camera without asking.

8. It is necessary for him to have an international driving licence.

has He _____ an international driving licence.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

fall behind: not make progress or move forward as fast as you were supposed to

fall off: become detached

fall out: (1) be separated from sb's body (e.g. hair, a tooth)
(2) have an argument with sb

fill in: complete

find out: learn sth you didn't know, usually through deliberate effort

1. When I went to the bank to ask for a loan, I had to _____ hundreds of forms.

2. Oh no! The sign has _____ the wall.

3. I was sick last week and as a result I have _____ in my work.

4. Did you _____ who sent you the package?

5. John and Brian used to _____ a lot and they eventually stopped being friends.

B Complete using prepositions.

1. Jenny reminds me _____ that teacher we had five years ago.

2. We have a preference _____ chocolate milk.

3. There must be a solution _____ Jim's problem.

4. The football team has just arrived _____ the airport.

5. Did you get an invitation _____ the wedding?

6. I prefer coffee _____ tea.

7. Do you think Jane will mind if I lend her book _____ Kathy?

8. We must decide _____ where to go for the long weekend.

9. Paul spends a lot of time _____ computer games.

10. Unfortunately, I'm working on Saturday, so you can forget _____ going to the beach.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

WE ARE THE CHAMPIONS!

The (1) _____ game between the Dragons and the Tigers is over. The Tigers' failure to win means they won't play in the finals.

The Dragons played a (2) _____ game and earned everyone's (3) _____.

Their (4) _____ of tactics and strength definitely helped them win. Due to the continuous (5) _____ of new strategies by their coach, this will be the (6) _____ year in a row that the Dragons will play in the final. Their (7) _____ has increased over the years and there is no doubt that Hillbell Stadium will be (8) _____ with fans who are as (9) _____ as the players. If they continue to play like today, they are sure to be (10) _____.

EXCITE

WONDER

ADMIRE

COMBINE

DEVELOP

FIVE

POPULAR

CROWD

ENTHUSE

SUCCESS

D Complete using the words given.

game (n): a pastime or amusement; a contest based on rules, whose result is determined by skill, knowledge, strength or chance

match (n): an organised game of football, cricket or other sport

beat (v): defeat sb in a competition or election

win (v): achieve first place and gain a prize in a competition

earn (v): receive money as payment for your work

gain (v): acquire sth (gradually)

match (v): (1) be in harmony with sth
(2) have a pleasing appearance when used together

suit (v): (1) be convenient for sb or the best choice in a particular situation

fit (v): make sb look attractive
be of the correct size or shape

1. I always beat Tom at board _____.

2. The football cup final was the most exciting _____ of the season.



3. I hope to _____ the championship.

4. The opposition party _____ the party in office in the elections on Sunday.

5. I _____ a good salary which allows me to live comfortably.

6. The supermarket chain gave out free gifts to _____ more popularity.

7. These shoes don't _____ me, I need a bigger size.

8. Fashionable women usually buy handbags to _____ their shoes.

9. Buy the white blouse. The colour really _____ you.

Revision | 02

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. Jim _____ be at home. I just saw him outside.
 a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. can't d. might not
2. We are really looking forward _____ the competition.
 a. entering b. to enter c. enter d. to entering
3. Playing ball in the classroom was a bad idea, boys. You could _____ a window.
 a. broke b. have been breaking c. be breaking d. have broken
4. The girl admitted _____ to her teacher.
 a. to lie b. be lying c. having lied d. to have lied
5. Do we _____ attend the meeting?
 a. ought to b. have got to c. must d. have to
6. The robber was made _____ where he had hidden the money.
 a. to confess b. confess c. confessing d. to confessing
7. Mike, _____ we borrow your laptop? We're working on a school project tonight.
 a. would b. will c. could d. must
8. I have forgotten _____ this machine. Can you show me how?
 a. how to operate b. to operate c. operating d. how operates
9. It's difficult for me _____ whether I should accept the job offer or not.
 a. decide b. deciding c. to deciding d. to decide
10. We saw the girls _____ football as we drove past the field.
 a. play b. to playing c. to play d. playing
11. I don't think the company can afford _____ any new staff this year.
 a. to employ b. to employing c. to have employed d. be employing
12. Don't you know that you _____ put that watch in water? It's not waterproof.
 a. don't have to b. needn't c. didn't need to d. mustn't
13. _____ you tell me how much this costs?
 a. May b. Would c. Might d. Had better
14. "What would you like to do tonight?"
 "We _____ go out."
 a. could b. would c. need d. have to
15. I think you _____ consider buying the house.
 a. can b. need c. shall d. should

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. It was wrong of you to cheat in the exam.

ought You _____ in the exam.

2. Hearing that an earthquake had occurred was a great shock to us.

shocked We _____ that an earthquake had occurred.

3. Steve doesn't mind travelling by bus.

used Steve _____ by bus.

4. It is necessary to buy skiing equipment if you want to take lessons.
have You _____ skiing equipment if you want to take lessons.

5. It isn't necessary for him to pick us up from the airport.
need He _____ from the airport.

6. Have you forgotten that you sent her a letter last month?
remember Don't _____ a letter last month?

7. I'm sure Ted isn't older than me because he went to school with my younger brother.
can't Ted _____ me because he went to school with my younger brother.

8. He believes that we will visit him on Saturday.
expects He _____ on Saturday.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. Please send your _____ to 22 Market St.
2. You'd be _____ too if you had been waiting for two hours!
3. This outfit is _____ for the meeting, don't you think?
4. The _____ at Maxwell's are all trained in customer service.
5. The children's _____ was obvious at the graduation ceremony.
6. The film is a bit depressing as it deals with the _____ of homeless people.
7. He works with great _____.
8. I can't find the _____ to the last Maths problem.

APPLY
PATIENT
SUIT
EMPLOY
EXCITE
REAL
ENTHUSE
SOLVE

C Complete using the -ing form or the infinitive of the verbs in brackets.

Next stop Mars... .



(1) _____ (travel) to Mars might (2) _____ (become) a reality sooner than you think. Scientists are planning (3) _____ (send) astronauts (4) _____ (explore) Mars in the near future. The surprising thing is that they are not planning (5) _____ (send) animals first, but insist on (6) _____ (send) people, even though it may (7) _____ (be) risky. That's because scientists believe that it's the only way (8) _____ (find out) if there is or ever has been life on the planet and if there could ever (9) _____ (be). "We are in favour of (10) _____ (explore) the possibility of (11) _____ (be) able to live there. There's no point in (12) _____ (begin) this expedition with animals, is there?" says Professor Huxley. Other experts in the field object to (13) _____ (send) people up there so soon in the experiment. "We need (14) _____ (study) the planet as much as we can before we start (15) _____ (do) anything. It's no good (16) _____ (risk) our astronauts' lives and (17) _____ (spend) millions of dollars until we are absolutely sure."

09 Articles

A/An

The indefinite article **a/an** is used before singular countable nouns or adjectives followed by singular nouns.

a + consonant sounds

a ruler, a European country, a university,
a one-way ticket, a hospital, a blue overcoat

an + vowel sounds

an apple, an egg, an umbrella, an orange,
an hour, an exciting holiday

note

- Uncountable or plural countable nouns take **some / any**, etc.
I've bought some magazines. We haven't got any more ice cream.
- A/An is not used before uncountable nouns, except in certain expressions:
It is (such) a pity / shame! A good knowledge of French is required for this job.
What a relief! She has a love of / a hatred of / fear of cats.
- A/An - one:** *He has got a car. (We do not specify what kind of car.)*
They have got one car. (only one, not more)

Use

The indefinite article is used:

- before a noun which is mentioned for the first time and represents no particular person or thing.
- before a noun which represents a group of people, animals or things.
We can also use **the** or the plural form.
- when talking about someone's character, job or nationality.
- in certain numerical expressions:

a couple / dozen	a thousand / million
a half / quarter	a great deal of
a lot of	a great many
- to talk about: price per weight or item
distance per amount of fuel or speed
frequency per time
certain illnesses
- before **Mr/Mrs/Miss/Ms + surname** when we refer to someone unknown.

Examples

- They live in a flat.
Take a break.*
- A car is faster than a bike.
The dolphin is an intelligent animal.
Children need love and affection.*
- He is a pessimist.
Her husband is an accountant.
Howard is an Englishman. **But:** Claire is Spanish.*
- We need a hundred copies.
A great many teenagers download information from the Net.
They walked a quarter of a mile.*
- This perfume costs £55 a bottle.
My car does 50 miles a gallon/130 kilometres an hour.
They go shopping twice a week.
He has a fever / a cold / a toothache.*
- A Mrs Jones wants to see you.*

The

The definite article **the** is used before countable and uncountable nouns of all genders both in the singular and the plural.

The definite article is used:

- before countable and uncountable nouns which are specific or have been mentioned before.
I'll see the doctor tomorrow.
The postman brought three letters and a parcel; the parcel was for Mary.

The definite article is NOT used:

- before countable and uncountable nouns which refer to something general or have not been mentioned before.
He likes coffee.
Experience is important for this job.
Whales are mammals.

2. before **unique nouns**.
the Earth, the sky, the Pyramids
3. before **names of seas, oceans, rivers, channels/canals, coasts, deserts, countries or regions** (plural), **groups of islands, mountain ranges**:
the Mediterranean, the Pacific, the Mississippi, the English Channel, the Panama Canal, the Blue Coast, the Kalahari Desert, the Netherlands, the Highlands, the Bahamas, the Andes
4. with **buildings: cinemas, theatres, museums, galleries, restaurants, hotels, institutions**:
the Odeon cinema, the Royal Theatre, the British Museum, the National Gallery, the Pasta House, the Hilton, the British Council
5. with **newspapers, ships, services, organisations**:
the Guardian, the Queen Mary, the police, the United Nations
6. with **names of families and nationalities** (when we refer to the whole family or nation):
the Simpsons, the Dutch, the Japanese
The is optional with nationalities ending in -s (*the*) Greeks, (*the*) Australians, etc.
7. before **inventions** and the word **radio**:
When was the telephone invented?
We heard the news on the radio.
But: *I saw that documentary on TV last week.*
8. with the **superlative degree** of adjectives and adverbs.
He is the best student in his class.
Most does not take **the** when it is a determiner:
Most students passed the exam.
9. with **adjectives referring to classes of people**:
the old, the blind, the poor, the educated, etc.
10. with **only, same and ordinal numbers + nouns**
This is the only pen I've got.
Cats are not all the same.
Who was the first astronaut to walk on the Moon?
11. before **noun + of + noun**:
the gulf of Mexico, the Statue of Liberty
12. with **titles** (not accompanied by proper names):
the King, the Queen, the Prince of Wales
But: *Queen Beatrix of Holland, Princess Margaret*
13. with **historical events or references**:
the Greek Revolution, the American Civil War
But: *World War II.*
14. with the **North, the South, the East, the West**:
Last year we visited the South of France.

2. before **names of people, streets, cities, islands, countries, continents, mountains** (singular), **days of the week, months**:
Maggie Smith, Oxford Street, Berlin, Ibiza, Italy, Asia, Mont Blanc, Friday, August
But: *the High Street, the Hague, the Vatican*
The is optional before the names of seasons when the meaning is general:
Where do you usually go in (the) summer?
The is used when we talk about a specific season.
Do you remember the winter of 2011?
3. before **names of squares, parks, lakes, stations**
Euston Square, Holland Park, Lake Ontario, Liverpool Street station
4. with **restaurants, hotels, shops, banks**, etc. whose names include the name of their founder or another proper name (e.g. a place)
Luigi's Restaurant, Emily's Hotel, Harrods, Lloyds Bank, Gatwick Airport
5. before names of **magazines, sports, games, colours, school subjects and languages**:
Newsweek (but: The Economist), tennis, white, geography, Greek
German is a difficult language.
But: *The German language is difficult to learn.*
6. before names of **airlines or companies**:
Air France, Interamerican, BMW, etc.
7. with **meals** (breakfast, lunch, dinner, snack):
What did you have for breakfast?
But: When we talk about a specific meal, we use **the**:
I didn't enjoy the dinner on the plane.
8. before the words **bed, court, church, home, hospital, prison, school, university, work** when they are used for the purpose for which they exist:
Thomas went to university to study engineering.
But: *Patrick went to the university to visit his professor.*
9. before the words **father, mother, mum, dad** (when we refer to our own parents).
Father / Daddy taught me how to drive.
10. before means of **transport**.
I travel by car / by bus / by train / by air.
Also: *on foot, on horseback*
But: *He was in the car / on the bus when I saw him.*
11. with **north, south, east, west** when they are used as adverbs.
They are heading west.
12. with some **diseases** (cancer, malaria, etc.)
You should be vaccinated against malaria if you want to travel to the tropics.

Grammar Practice

A Complete using *a*, *an*, *the* or *-*.

Not just a cup of tea

- (1) _____ tea is (2) _____ evergreen plant. It was accidentally discovered by (3) _____ Emperor (4) _____ Shen Nung of (5) _____ China. Whilst on (6) _____ trip, he was boiling (7) _____ pot of water when (8) _____ tea leaf fell into it.
- (9) _____ British sailors, returning from (10) _____ Far East, brought packets of (11) _____ tea back (12) _____ home as presents for their relatives.
- (13) _____ first advertisement for (14) _____ tea appeared in (15) _____ newspaper called Mercurius Politicus in 1660. (16) _____ advertisement in (17) _____ newspaper said that (18) _____ tea could cure (19) _____ colds and other illnesses.
- (20) _____ poor were prepared to pay as much as (21) _____ third of their weekly wage to have (22) _____ tea.

- (23) _____ tea has been (24) _____ most popular drink in (25) _____ Britain for three hundred years. (26) _____ average Briton drinks thirty cups of (27) _____ tea (28) _____ week. In fact, (29) _____ British import almost twenty-five percent of all (30) _____ tea exported in (31) _____ world.

B Complete using *a*, *an*, *the* or *-*.

1. _____ Jim listens to _____ radio when he is at _____ home.
2. Unfortunately, there are _____ lot of accidents on _____ motorway between _____ Athens and _____ Salónica.
3. _____ Hyde Park is _____ biggest park in _____ London.
4. _____ malaria is _____ disease carried by _____ mosquitoes.
5. Every year _____ swimmers attempt to swim across _____ English Channel.
6. _____ Ibiza is _____ island off _____ coast of _____ Spain and is part of _____ Balearic islands.
7. It has been _____ long time since I last spoke _____ Russian.
8. _____ Europe is _____ smallest continent on Earth, yet it is _____ most heavily populated.
9. _____ most flowers bloom in _____ spring.
10. Every year _____ millions of people visit _____ Statue of Liberty.
11. _____ colours of _____ Greek flag are _____ blue and _____ white.
12. In 1995, _____ United Nations celebrated their fiftieth anniversary.
13. _____ father is taking us to _____ nice restaurant called _____ Wheeler's on _____ Sunday for _____ dinner.
14. _____ Stu is _____ mechanical engineer but he also writes for _____ Herald.
15. Head _____ east for about _____ hour and you'll find _____ Palace Hotel on _____ right hand side of _____ motorway.



C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Andrew said that his tooth was aching, so his father took him to the dentist.
had Andrew said that _____, so his father took him to the dentist.

2. Connor has become a very good football player.
learnt Connor has _____ football very well.

3. He had to catch a bus to work this morning because his car had broken down.
go He had to _____ this morning because his car had broken down.

4. As a student, I couldn't afford a car other than that old Mini Cooper.
only That old Mini Cooper _____ I could afford as a student.

5. Did you know that a lot of rice is consumed in China?
Chinese Did you know that _____ a lot of rice?

6. My weekly wage is \$120, which isn't a great deal.
week I get _____, which isn't a great deal.

7. The government should help the people who are out of work, don't you think?
unemployed The government should help _____, don't you think?

8. I'm really disappointed that he didn't win the race.
pity It _____ that he didn't win the race.

6. You
a. a
7. The
a. a
8. The
a. a
9. You
a. t
10. The

C Cor

My dearest one. A stable place and am work in time
(6) _____
(7) _____
(8) _____
on my Putting never k

D Com

miss
lose
loose
lack
short

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

go ahead (with sth):	start doing sth after planning it or asking permission for it
go on (with sth):	continue doing sth
go out:	stop burning
go over:	examine, discuss or think about sth carefully or in detail
go up:	increase, become higher or greater than before
go with:	belong together with sth else

1. The bank manager wants to _____ the details of the loan before he approves it.
 2. I suggest you _____ with your picnic, regardless of the weather forecast.
 3. The fire _____ after burning for seven hours.
 4. The skirt _____ the vest. You can't buy them separately.
 5. Interest rates have really _____ this month.
 6. I've filled in part of the application form but I can't _____ because I need more information.

B Choose the correct answers.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

THE ART OF PAINTING

My decision to become an (1) _____ was not an easy one. After all, one's ability to paint well isn't enough. It isn't a stable profession. However, I find painting most (2) _____ and am willing to live without job (3) _____. I exhibit my work in art galleries and I take part in art (4) _____ from time to time. The problem is that before an (5) _____ I get really (6) _____, even though I've had years of experience. So I'm always (7) _____ in the beginning and watch the visitors to see what their (8) _____ to my art is. But once the first people come to congratulate me on my work, I immediately relax and have (9) _____ in my creations. Putting on canvas the images you have in your mind is always a challenge and you never know if your work will meet with (10) _____.

ART

**ENJOY
SECURE
COMPETE
EXHIBIT
NERVE
TERROR
REACT
CONFIDENT**

SUCCEED

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

miss (v): (1) not attend or take part in sth because you are unable to, don't want to or have forgotten to (2) arrive too late to catch a bus/train/plane, etc.

lose (v): (1) not know where sth is because you have forgotten where you put it (2) to have been deprived of sth

loose (adj): not tight

lack (n): when sth is insufficient or does not exist at all

shortage (n): deficiency, not having enough of sth

reduce (v): make smaller in quantity or size
decrease (v): become smaller in quantity or

divide (v): size
separate sth into smaller equal parts

divide (v.) separates something into smaller equal parts

lie (v): (1) (lie-lay-lain) be in a horizontal position; not standing or sitting (2) (lie-lied-lied) not to tell the truth

lay (v): (lay-laid-laid) place sth somewhere

- I've lost weight and these jeans are too _____ for me to wear.
 - You won't believe what happened. I _____ the plane!
 - Karen has _____ her passport and can't leave the country until she finds it.
 - There has been a _____ of water this summer and as a result, we aren't allowed to water our gardens.
 - A _____ of calcium in his diet didn't allow him to develop strong bones.
 - The teacher _____ the students into four groups.
 - During the summer sales, many shops _____ their prices by up to 60%.
 - The national debt has _____ by one percent this year.
 - Craig is _____ down because he's not feeling very well.
 - I suggest you _____ the blanket on the ground before we sit down and have our picnic.
 - How can I trust you? You've _____ to me so many times.

A. Countable Nouns

Countable nouns can be counted and have singular and plural forms. They are defined by **a/an**, **one** in the singular and **some, any, (a) few**, etc. in the plural.

Plural Formation

Regular nouns

- Most nouns take **-s**:
car-cars
- Nouns ending in **-ch, -sh, -x, -s, -ss** take **-es**:
watch-watches, fox-foxes, bus-buses
- Nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** form their plural in **-ves**:
wolf-wolves, life-lives
But: some nouns just take **-s** and some others form their plural in both ways:
belief - beliefs, roof - roofs, safe - safes, scarf - scarfs/scarves

- Nouns ending in **-o**, normally take **-es**:
tomato-tomatoes

But: nouns ending in **vowel + -o** (e.g. *radio*), musical instruments (e.g. *piano*) and abbreviations (e.g. *photo*), take **-s**:
radio-radios, piano-pianos, photo-photos

- Nouns ending in **-y**, drop the **-y** and take **-ies**:
library-libraries

But: nouns ending in **vowel + -y**, take **-s**:
boy-boys, tray-trays

Irregular nouns

- Some nouns change completely in the plural:

<i>man - men</i>	<i>goose - geese</i>
<i>woman - women</i>	<i>mouse - mice</i>
<i>child - children</i>	<i>louse - lice</i>
<i>foot - feet</i>	<i>ox - oxen</i>
<i>tooth - teeth</i>	

- Some nouns are the same in the singular and the plural form:

<i>deer - deer</i>	<i>species - species</i>
<i>sheep - sheep</i>	<i>series - series</i>
<i>fish - fish</i>	<i>aircraft - aircraft</i>
<i>salmon - salmon</i>	<i>means - means</i>
<i>trout - trout</i>	<i>crossroads - crossroads</i>

- Certain nouns are always in the plural form.

These are:

- arms (=weapons), clothes, contents, customs, goods, people, police, scales, stairs, surroundings (=environment)*
- all nouns that consist of two parts: *binoculars, glasses, jeans, pliers, pyjamas, scissors, shorts, tights, trousers, etc.*

With these nouns we often use **a pair of**.

- Some nouns of Greek or Latin origin form their plural by adding Greek or Latin suffixes:
analysis - analyses criterion - criteria
basis - bases phenomenon - phenomena
crisis - crises medium - media

- Collective nouns describe groups of people: *audience, class, committee, crew, family, government, jury, staff*, etc. These nouns take a plural verb if they refer to the members of the group individually, and a singular verb if the group is considered as a unit.

My family are organising a trip to Italy.

(The family is seen as a group of individuals.)

The government is thinking of increasing taxes.

(The government is seen as one unit.)

- Nouns preceded by cardinal numbers and used before other nouns are always in the singular form:
a ten-pound note (not a ten-pounds note)
a three-year-old boy

note

Some nouns have different forms for the masculine and the feminine gender:

husband → wife
father → mother
son → daughter
hero → heroine

nephew → niece
boy → girl
(bride)groom → bride
uncle → aunt

waiter → waitress
steward → stewardess
brother → sister
host → hostess

prince → princess
duke → duchess
widower → widow
king → queen

B. Uncountable Nouns

Uncountable nouns cannot be counted and have no plural form. **Some**, **any**, **(a) little**, etc. can be used with most of them, but not **a/an/one**.

Food	meat, cheese, bread, butter, fruit, fish, etc.	Diseases	measles, chickenpox, cancer, etc.
Liquids	milk, water, coffee, tea, etc.	Sciences and School Subjects	Mathematics, Physics, Chemistry, Economics, Literature, etc.
Material	glass, wood, iron, paper, steel, gold, etc.	Games	baseball, billiards, darts, football, golf, tennis, etc.
Natural Phenomena	weather, heat, snow, lightning, wind, rain, thunder, etc.	Abstract nouns	beauty, freedom, love, honesty, justice, business, work, time, information, news, knowledge, accommodation, etc.
Languages	English, French, Greek, Japanese, Italian, etc.	Some Concrete Nouns	baggage, furniture, money, luggage, traffic, business, etc.

note

- The quantity of uncountable nouns is defined by other words that we can put in front of them:

a cup of coffee/tea
a bottle of water
a glass of water/orange juice
a jar of jam
a piece of cake/advice/information/news
a piece/sheet of paper

a packet of tea/flour
a carton of milk
a slice/loaf of bread
a lump of sugar
an ice cube/a sugar cube
a pot of yoghurt

a bar of chocolate/soap
a can of soda
a block of wood/ice
a tube of toothpaste
a flash/bolt of lightning
a clap/peal of thunder

- Some nouns can be either countable or uncountable, but with different meanings:

Uncountable

There's a lot of **light** in this room.
This bottle is made of **glass**.
She brushes her **hair** every morning.
This table is made of pine **wood**.
She loves walking in the **rain**.
I've still got some **work** to do.
Experience is important for this job.

Countable

Please, turn on the **lights**.
He can't see without his **glasses**.
He found two **hairs** in his soup.
We saw a fox in the **woods**.
How often do the **rains** come in Thailand?
The motorway is closed due to road **works**.
We had some fascinating **experiences** when we visited Japan.

C. Compound Nouns

Compound Nouns consist of two parts. Be careful with their plural!

Types of Compound Nouns

Noun + noun <i>reception hall</i> → <i>reception halls</i> But: <i>taxi driver</i> → <i>taxi drivers</i>	-ing + noun <i>dining room</i> → <i>dining rooms</i>	Adjective + noun <i>greenhouse</i> → <i>greenhouses</i>
Noun + preposition + noun <i>sister-in-law</i> → <i>sisters-in-law</i>	Noun + preposition <i>passer-by</i> → <i>passers-by</i>	No noun (e.g. verb + preposition) <i>a take-off</i> → <i>take-offs</i>

Grammar Practice

A Put the words in brackets into the plural form where necessary.

1. Appliances Plus sells many different brands of _____ (tape recorder).
2. _____ (tea), which is made from the dried _____ (leaf) of a small bush, was discovered five thousand years ago.
3. Margaret and Don have two _____ (three-year-old) _____ (daughter). They are _____ (twin)!
4. **Jack:** I can't see a thing.
Brian: Do you want your _____ (glass)?
Jack: No. It's the dim _____ (light) that is making it difficult to see.
5. The first three _____ (runner-up) will each receive a medal.
6. The attic is full of _____ (mouse).
7. The Italian and French _____ (dictionary) are on the top shelf.
8. He met all the _____ (criterion) for the job but wasn't hired because he was late for the interview.
9. We are waiting for all the _____ (staff) to arrive before beginning the meeting.
10. That booklet has all the _____ (information) you'll need.

B Choose the correct answers.

1. I'm really thirsty. Could you get me a _____ of water?
 a. glass b. jar c. can
2. Could I have a _____ of cheese, please?
 a. bar b. slice c. sheet
3. I made a mistake. Could you get me a clean _____ of paper?
 a. block b. packet c. sheet
4. Mum, where's the _____ of marmalade?
 a. tube b. jar c. cup
5. A sudden _____ of lightning lit the sky up for a second.
 a. flash b. clap c. block
6. This is a _____ of my favourite soap. I love the way it smells.
 a. lump b. packet c. bar
7. Can I have two _____ of sugar in my tea, please?
 a. lumps b. pieces c. pints

C Complete using **a**, **an**, **some**, **any** or **-**.

1. I teach _____ History and _____ Spanish.
2. I'm really thirsty. Do you have _____ juice? Otherwise _____ water is fine.
3. _____ igloo is made from _____ ice.
4. I'd like _____ tomatoes, _____ lettuce and _____ oranges, please.
5. _____ cancer is _____ disease which a lot of people die of.
6. Have _____ food. You must be starving after playing _____ football all day.
7. We decided to replace the balcony door with _____ sliding glass door because we wanted more _____ light in the living room.

8. There isn't _____ paper left in the machine so I can't make _____ photocopies.
9. Jane would like _____ time off _____ work. She needs _____ holiday.
10. Brian had _____ unexpected phone call from World Travel this morning. They told him that he had won _____ trip to Hawaii, including free _____ accommodation.

D Circle the correct answers. In some cases, both answers may be correct.

1. The crew **is / are** getting the ship ready to sail.
2. Snow **cover / covers** the whole valley in winter.
3. Scales **measure / measures** weight.
4. Salmon **spend / spends** the first part of their life in a river.
5. The medium which **is / are** used mostly for advertising
is / are television.
6. News **travel / travels** fast nowadays.
7. The firewood you bought **burn / burns** well.
8. The cheese on the table **is / are** very tasty. Try it.
9. This series of books **contain / contains** medical information.



E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. They went on holiday to Tunisia for two weeks.
week They went _____ to Tunisia.
2. My glasses need changing, Mum.
pair I need _____, Mum.
3. How many suitcases do you have?
much How _____ do you have?
4. He has travelled a lot by air, but he still gets nervous when the aircraft takes off.
make Although he has travelled a lot by air, _____ nervous.
5. Paul likes playing darts more than any other game.
favourite Darts _____ game.
6. It didn't rain a lot last year.
had We _____ last year.
7. I'll give you some advice, Mary.
of I'll give you _____, Mary.
8. She doesn't know a lot about astronomy.
knowledge Her _____ very poor.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

hand in: give sth (a document, homework, a notice of resignation, etc.) to sb in charge or of authority

hand out: distribute sth to several people

hang about: spend time at a place not doing anything important

wait for a short time

hang on: end a phone call and put down the receiver

1. A lot of young people _____ on the street corner.
2. The teacher _____ the test papers to all the students.
3. When she had finished the call, she _____ and went into the kitchen to tell her husband the news.
4. All the students had to _____ their essays by the end of the week.
5. Could you _____ a minute while I finish with this customer?

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

in addition (to): besides, as well as, also

in advance: beforehand, before doing sth

in bed: (still) sleeping or not having got up yet

in the beginning: initially, at first

in case of: as a precaution against

in cash: in notes and/or coins

in charge of: responsible for sth

1. We've given some money _____ and we'll pay the rest when we get the car.
2. Scott is a foreman and is _____ many workers.
3. Victoria doesn't feel well. She's been _____ nearly all morning.
4. The price includes the flight and hotel accommodation. _____, you'll be provided with a rental car.
5. Will you pay for the items _____ or by credit card?
6. You must have a first-aid kit in your car _____ an emergency.
7. The children were excited about the trip _____, but now they've lost interest.

C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

reveal (v): uncover or expose sth hidden, make it known to people

confess (v): admit that you have done sth wrong or shameful

admit (v): acknowledge that sth is true

agree (v): have the same opinion as sb else about sth

accept (v): say "yes" to sth or agree to take sth

prevent (v): (1) make sure that sth will not happen (2) make it impossible for sb to do sth

avoid (v): take action so as not to do sth unpleasant

1. The criminal finally _____ after forty-eight hours of questioning.
2. Will you _____ that what you did was wrong?
3. Statistics _____ that people are recycling rubbish more than they did in the past.
4. I don't _____ with the new policy the committee has introduced.
5. We _____ Jane's invitation. She is always a wonderful hostess.
6. I _____ walking down dark streets at night.
7. Wearing a seat belt could _____ you from getting hurt in an accident.

A. Adjectives

- Adjectives are placed before nouns to describe them.
- They have the same form in the singular and the plural.
- They can follow expressions of measurement.
- Adjectives may appear after linking verbs (**appear, be, become, come, get, go, grow, keep, prove, remain, seem, stay, turn**, etc.).

After the verbs **feel, look, smell, sound, taste**, we use adjectives, not adverbs.

Adjectives beginning with **a-** (afraid, alive, alone, awake, etc.), **ill** and **glad** appear only after linking verbs.

He is a famous author; everybody knows his novels.

They live in a large house near the beach.

This neighbourhood is full of large houses.

The river is 50 metres wide.

John is lucky to have a friend like you.

This soup tastes good.

This room smells awful.

She's been awake since six o'clock.

She fell seriously ill last year.

I'm sure he'll be glad to meet you.

note

- We use adjectives such as **young, old, blind, deaf, poor, rich, unemployed, illiterate**, etc. with the definite article **the** to describe groups of people in terms of age or status. In this case, the adjectives are **not followed by nouns** and the verb of the sentence is usually in the **plural**.
- We can also use as adjectives:
 - ▶ nouns followed by other nouns describing material and purpose.
*Amy got a **gold** bracelet as a present.*
 - ▶ nouns preceded by cardinal numbers.
*My house is only a **ten-minute** walk from here.*
 - ▶ present and past participles.
*She heard a **frightening** noise.*
 - ▶ **He won a **well-deserved** gold medal.**

Order of adjectives

NUMBER	OPINION	FACT							NOUN
		Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	Purpose	
Three	practical	small	new	rectangular	yellow	Korean	plastic	lunch	boxes

B. Adverbs

Adverbs describe

- ▶ **verbs**, e.g. *Read the instructions carefully.*
- ▶ **adjectives**, e.g. *I'm awfully sorry about what happened.*
- ▶ **other adverbs**, e.g. *He speaks very quickly.*
- ▶ **whole sentences**, e.g. *Apparently, he has forgotten our appointment.*

Use and Placement

Adverbs	Placement	Examples
Adverbs of manner (seriously, happily, quietly, etc.)	<p>They appear in any position in a sentence. At the beginning of a sentence, they show emphasis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In the active voice, adverbs of manner usually go after the main verb and its object. In the passive voice, they are usually placed before the main verb. 	<i>He dictated the letter slowly.</i> <i>He slowly dictated the letter.</i> <i>Slowly, he dictated the letter.</i> <i>Some people learn languages easily.</i> <i>Some languages are easily learnt.</i>
Adverbs of place (here, there, etc.)	They usually appear at the end of a sentence or after the verb and its object.	<i>I'll see you there.</i>
Adverbs of time (now, today, soon, recently, etc.)	<p>They are usually placed at the end of a sentence. They may appear at the beginning for emphasis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> One syllable adverbs (soon, then, etc.) usually appear in the middle of a sentence. Just goes after the auxiliary verb. 	<i>Call him tomorrow.</i> <i>Last year we went to Spain for our holidays, but this year we'll stay in Greece.</i> <i>I'll soon need a new pair of shoes.</i> <i>She has just arrived.</i>
Order of adverbs:	manner - place - time <ul style="list-style-type: none"> after verbs of movement: place - manner - time 	<i>Did you work hard at school yesterday?</i> <i>Did you go to Paris by plane last summer?</i>
Adverbs of frequency (occasionally, rarely, often, always, etc.)	They usually appear before the main verb but after the (first) auxiliary and the verb "to be".	<i>She rarely visits her grandparents.</i> <i>I've always wanted to live in Paris.</i> <i>He is never at home on Sundays.</i>
Adverbs of degree (rather, quite, very, hardly, absolutely, etc.)	<p>They usually appear before the word they modify.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a + quite/rather + adjective + noun or quite/rather + a/an + adjective + noun But: a + fairly/pretty + adjective + noun 	<i>I absolutely love this book.</i> <i>The trip was rather interesting.</i> <i>It was a rather dangerous expedition.</i> <i>It was rather a dangerous expedition.</i> <i>It was a pretty dangerous expedition.</i>
Sentence adverbs (apparently, definitely, obviously, probably, etc.)	<p>They express how sure we are about what is said and they appear:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> at the beginning of a sentence. before the main verb or after the auxiliary. at the end of a sentence. 	<i>Apparently, he won't be here on time.</i> <i>You've obviously made a mistake.</i> <i>She is very beautiful, undoubtedly.</i>

note

- Some words ending in **-ly** are adjectives, not adverbs: **deadly, elderly, friendly, lively, lonely, lovely, silly**, etc. The adverb of these adjectives is formed with "**in a ... way/manner**".
He is a very friendly person. That's why everybody likes him.
He treats his employees in a very friendly manner.
- Some other words ending in **-ly** are both adjectives and adverbs: **hourly, daily, early, weekly, monthly, yearly**, etc.
This is a daily programme. *He brushes his teeth twice daily.*
- Pay attention to the meaning of the following adverbs:

late = not early	lately = recently
hard = with a lot of effort	hardly = almost not any
near = close	nearly = almost

C. Comparisons

Formation of comparisons (Adjectives and Adverbs)

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative	Be careful with:
one-syllable adjectives and adverbs	short fast shy	short-er fast-er shy-er	the short-est the fast-est the shy-est	hot - hotter - the hottest simple - simpler - the simplest dry - drier - the driest
two-syllable adjectives and adverbs ending in -y	funny early	funnier earlier	the funniest the earliest	
adjectives and adverbs with more than one syllable	modern often	more modern more often	the most modern the most often	quiet - quieter - the quietest or quiet - more quiet - the most quiet But: recent - more recent - the most recent

Irregular Forms

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good/well	better	the best
bad/badly	worse	the worst
old	older/elder	the oldest/eldest
far	farther/further	the farthest/furthest
much/many	more	the most
little	less	the least

note

Comparative + than

Mary is taller than Anne.

of all / period of time

The + superlative + in + place / group of people

Neil is the best student of all / in his class.

Pablo Picasso was among the most important artists of the 20th century.

Elder/Eldest describe family relations. Elder is not followed by **than**.

My elder brother is studying in England.

My brother is older than me (not elder than me).

Farther/Farthest are used only for distance.

Further/Furthest are used for distance but they also mean more/most.

Today we walked farther/further than we did yesterday.

There are no further details available yet.

When we compare two people or things, we can use **the + comparative** (not the + superlative).

Sam is the taller of the two brothers.

- We can emphasise the meaning of adjectives and adverbs by adding:

- ▶ **very, pretty, most, rather, quite, fairly** in the positive degree.

He was most annoyed by the flight delay.

- ▶ **a bit, a lot, even, far, much, rather** in the comparative degree.

He is far more intelligent than his brother.

Types of Comparisons

Type	Use	Examples
as...as	Similarity	I won't miss an event as interesting as that one.
like		He must be sleeping like a log.
the same as		This exercise is the same as the previous one.
not so/as + ... + as	Dissimilarity	A bicycle is not so/as fast as a car.
not such a + ... + noun + as		Tim is not such a fast runner as his brother.
comparative/superlative twice/three times as...as	Superiority	A car is faster than a bicycle. This is the slowest car I've ever driven. He works twice as hard as his son.
less...than the least...	Inferiority	Italian food is less spicy than Indian. This is the least interesting book I've ever read.
the + comparative... the + comparative	Successive comparison, meaning that the second depends on the first.	The sooner we arrive, the better. The more you study, the more you learn.
comparative + comparative	Successive comparison, indicating a continual change.	The ozone layer is getting thinner and thinner.

Grammar Practice

A Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

1. My father always uses _____ pan to fry fish in.
(a/an, aluminium, big, round, frying)
2. Mr Brown found _____ boxes full of old photos.
(old, wooden, three)
3. I got _____ scarf for my sister.
(a/an, Italian, silk, blue, beautiful)
4. We have _____ table.
(a/an, oval, antique, dining, oak)
5. That is _____ ashtray. Don't you think?
(a/an, strange, green, glass, triangular)

B Choose the correct answers.

Pre-school teaching is a lot (1) _____ than most other jobs. People think that looking after young children is (2) _____ than looking after (3) _____ children, but then again the job is not as (4) _____ as some might think. What makes it difficult is that the (5) _____ they are, the (6) _____ responsibility you have.

Small children can be (7) _____. They are (8) _____ worried than adults about saying "inappropriate" things. Also, they are three times (9) _____ energetic as adults. The (10) _____ moments in the classroom are when it's quiet. Of course, you always get some children who are (11) _____ and (12) _____ than others by nature.

I arrive at work (13) _____ than teachers who work with (14) _____ children. Sure it's not the (15) _____ job in the world nor the (16) _____ paid. In fact, I know I could work elsewhere for (17) _____ hours and get paid (18) _____ money.

However, I believe it's a (19) _____ rewarding job (20) _____ many others I can think of.

1. a. more demanding b. demanding c. most demanding

2. a. easiest b. more easier c. easier

3. a. older b. elder c. oldest

4. a. bad b. badly c. worse

5. a. young b. younger c. youngest

6. a. most b. much c. more

7. a. funniest b. very funny c. much funny

8. a. little b. less c. least

9. a. so b. like c. as

10. a. rarer b. rarely c. rarest

11. a. shy b. shyer c. shyest

12. a. more quiet b. quiet c. more quieter

13. a. earliest b. earlier c. early

14. a. old b. older c. oldest

15. a. easier b. easy c. easiest

16. a. good b. better c. best

17. a. few b. fewer c. fewest

18. a. more b. much c. most

19. a. much b. most c. more

20. a. of b. than c. from

C Circle the correct answers.

1. The Johnsons bought a beautiful house at a **much / fairly** good price.
2. I was able to finish reading the book **much / most** sooner than I thought since I had some free time.
3. The baby's temperature must have risen. He feels **very / even** warmer than before.
4. Ray's get-together is going to be **quite / fairly** an exciting event. He told me that it's going to cost him **very / far** more than last year's.
5. This is a **rather / bit** good educational programme for children.
6. I'm leaving for the USA **pretty / a lot** sooner than I had originally planned.
7. It's **absolutely / very** marvellous that you could make it to the reunion.
8. Margaret finds reading books **most / much** relaxing.
9. I like the car but it's a **rather / bit** more expensive than I thought it would be.
10. It must be **far / pretty** exciting travelling all over the world.

D Rewrite the sentences using the adverbs in brackets.

1. Keith will go camping. (**in the spring/probably/there**)

2. Steven knew nothing about the robbery that took place. (**absolutely/yesterday/apparently**)

3. That restaurant is expensive, so I won't come with you. (**definitely/rather/tonight**)

4. Young people find part-time work. (**nowadays/in the summer/often**)

5. Peter has arrived but I'm sure he has forgotten about our meeting. (**completely/just/pretty**)

E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. We can't afford such an expensive holiday.
as We can't afford _____ that.
2. As we climbed higher, we had more difficulty breathing.
harder The _____ it was to breathe.
3. Jane gave us a warm welcome when we arrived.
friendly Jane welcomed _____ when we arrived.
4. The weather was getting worse by the minute, so we decided not to go out.
and The weather was getting _____, so we decided not to go out.
5. Carl skates better than his brother Alex.
such Alex is not _____ his brother Carl.
6. The journey was less tiring than I thought it would be.
as The journey _____ I thought it would be.
7. This is the worst book I have ever read.
than I have never read _____ this one.
8. Danny's briefcase is similar to yours.
same Danny's briefcase is almost _____ yours.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

hold on:	wait for a short time
hold on to:	hold sth
hold up:	(1) delay sb or sth (2) rob
hurry up:	make haste, do sth quickly
keep back:	reserve sth, not reveal or give away all of it
keep off:	stay off sth
keep on:	continue doing sth
keep out (of):	stay outside a place, not enter
keep up (with):	maintain the same level or speed as sb else

1. Can't you read the sign? It says _____ the grass!
2. Craig _____ working despite being tired.
3. Could you _____ a minute while I phone Mr Bent?
4. No matter how hard I tried, I couldn't _____ with Sam in the race.
5. Could you _____ these bags while I buy some bread?
6. _____! If we miss the bus, the next one isn't for an hour.
7. A masked man _____ the National Bank this morning, but he was caught later in the day.
8. The police _____ information about the murders so as not to scare people.
9. Please, _____ the cat _____ of the kitchen because I've just washed the floor.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

in common:	sharing certain things or characteristics
in comparison with:	compared with
in conclusion:	lastly, finally
in control of:	having the power to manipulate sth or make decisions about it
in danger:	in a dangerous situation
in detail:	analytically, precisely
in the end:	finally, lastly
in fact:	actually, in reality
in fashion:	fashionable
in favour of:	supporting sth
in good/bad condition:	in good/bad shape
in sb's free time:	when sb is not busy

1. The president of the company is the man _____ everything. Nothing can be done without his approval.
2. _____, I would like to thank you all for listening to me.
3. What do you do _____? Do you read books?
4. I agree with you. I am _____ renovating the house.
5. The witness was asked to describe _____ the events which took place on 26th March.
6. _____ last year's records, it seems that our sales have increased.
7. These bright colours are _____ this summer.
8. Even though we are brother and sister, we have nothing _____.
9. You should buy this second-hand car. It really is _____.
10. This painting looks like an original Monet, but _____ it is a copy.
11. We couldn't decide where to go for a holiday, so _____ we consulted our travel agent who suggested New Zealand.
12. If you continue spending money like this, you are _____ of losing your business.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

MOBILES: SLIMMER, LIGHTER, FASTER

In 1983 the first mobile phone was introduced on the market. This was one

(1) _____ that would make people's lives easier. The First Generation - or 1G - mobiles used analogue technology. This made 1G mobiles less (2) _____ than the current ones. A few years after their (3) _____, (4) _____ were able to take their phone outside their car, but because of its size, it was still (5) _____. The Second Generation - or 2G - mobiles came on the market with great (6) _____. With digital technology they were faster and much quieter than the previous ones. Mobiles today have become part of everyday life. 3G mobiles have (7) _____ capabilities such as sending and receiving e-mails, downloading information and using instant messaging to communicate with others. However, mobile phones can also be (8) _____ to our health. For instance, people who spend a lot of time using a mobile have complained about fatigue, headaches and (9) _____ of (10) _____. So keep that in mind if you really enjoy chatting for hours on your mobile.

INVENT

RELY

APPEAR

USE

CONVENIENT

IMPROVE

END

HARM

LOSE

CONCENTRATE

D Complete using the words given.

false (adj):

(1) incorrect, untrue, mistaken (2) artificial, not real (e.g. false teeth)

artificial (adj):

not natural (e.g. artificial flowers)

fake (adj):

sth looking valuable or genuine in order to deceive people (e.g. a fur coat)

unreal (adj):

(1) not real, imaginary (2) bizarre, so strange that you can't believe it is happening

untrue (adj):

not true, not based on fact

different

(from/to) (adj):

not the same

imitation (n):

a copy of sth, made to look as if it were genuine (e.g. imitation leather)

counterfeit (adj):

(money, goods, documents, etc.) not genuine, but looking genuine in order to deceive people

authentic (adj):

genuine

original (adj):

the first and genuine form of sth (a document, a work of art, etc.), not a copy

1. I avoid foods that have _____ additives.

2. Call the police. These American dollars are _____.

3. It felt so _____ seeing all my high-school friends after 15 years!

4. In the 1970s wearing _____ eyelashes was very fashionable.

5. This is a very good _____ of the painting.

6. That statement is _____. I have papers to prove it.

7. This architecture is _____ to anything I've ever seen before.

8. This isn't a real diamond. It's _____.

9. _____ Asian cuisine has some unusual herbs.

10. You keep the _____ copy and I keep the photocopy.

12 Determiners

A. Some / Any / No / Every / Each

Some, **any** and **no** are used with countable (singular and plural) and uncountable nouns. **Each** and **every** are used only with singular countable nouns. The compounds of **some**, **any**, **no** and **every** are pronouns; no noun can be used with them.

	Use	Examples
some someone/somebody something somewhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in affirmative sentences in questions when a positive answer is expected in polite requests and offers 	<i>Someone took my keys by mistake. Are you looking for something?</i>
any anyone/anybody anything anywhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in questions in affirmative sentences, meaning “no matter which” in negative sentences when not or other negative words (hardly, never, rarely, etc.) are included 	<i>Is anyone in the kitchen? You can visit us any day next week.</i> <i>I don't eat anything spicy. Hardly anyone has arrived yet.</i>
no no one/nobody nothing nowhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in negative sentences instead of not any; no other negative words can be used 	<i>He has nowhere to go.</i>
every everyone/everybody everything everywhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> when we consider people or things as a group with nearly and not <p>every one of + plural noun/pronoun</p>	<i>Every car has a steering wheel. Nearly every house in this area has a garden. Not every room has a nice view. I found every one of these books interesting.</i>
each	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> when we consider people or things separately <p>each (one) of + plural noun/pronoun</p>	<i>Each student came up with a different idea. Each one of them received a free copy of the magazine.</i>

note

- **Some of** and **any of** go with a plural verb.

Do any of your friends speak Italian?

- The **compounds** of **some**, **any**, **no** and **every** go with a singular verb. **Else** can be used with them (meaning “more” or “different”).

Someone else wants to speak to you.

- **Someone/somebody, anyone/anybody, no one/nobody** and **everyone/everybody**

refer to both genders, so we use plural pronouns and possessive adjectives.

They didn't take any photos because no one had brought their camera with them.

B. Much / Many / A lot of / (A) little / (A) few

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns	Use	Examples
many	much	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> mostly in questions and negations in affirmative sentences with too, so, how and as at the beginning of the sentence (in formal English) 	<i>Are there many homeless people in Athens?</i> <i>There is too much sugar in my coffee.</i> <i>Much money is spent on space exploration.</i>
a few	a little	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> they show a small amount (positive meaning) and can be used with only. 	<i>She has lived in England for a few years.</i> <i>I've only got a little work to do.</i>
few	little	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> they show a very small amount (negative meaning) and can go with very, so, too, as and how. 	<i>There are very few pencils on the table (not enough for everyone).</i> <i>There's too little sugar in my coffee.</i>
Countable and uncountable nouns			
a lot (of) lots of plenty (of)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in affirmative sentences before nouns and pronouns A lot, Lots and Plenty can also be used without nouns. 	<i>A lot of cars run on unleaded fuel.</i> <i>We needn't buy any more bread; we've got plenty.</i>

C. Both / Either / Neither / Most / All / None / Whole

For two people or things

Determiner	Use	Examples
Both (of)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It has a positive meaning and goes with a plural verb. 	<i>Both my brothers are engineers.</i> <i>They both live in England.</i>
Both ... and	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> They state that something is true for two people or things. The verb of the sentence is always in the plural form. 	<i>Both of them read the book.</i> <i>Both Tim and John like football.</i>
Either Either of Either ... or	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Either means "any one of the two". Either of goes with a singular or plural verb. They state that something is true for any one of two people, things, etc. The verb of the sentence is either in the singular or plural form. 	<i>Paris or London? Either city is beautiful.</i> <i>Either of these cards is/are fine.</i> <i>Either he was too busy or he didn't know about the meeting.</i>
Neither Neither of Neither ... nor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Neither means "not one and not the other". Neither of goes with a singular (formal) or plural verb (informal). They have a negative meaning and state that something is not true for either of the two people or things. The verb of the sentence is either in the singular or plural form. 	<i>Neither book was interesting.</i> <i>Neither of my parents works / work at weekends.</i> <i>Neither Tim nor John like(s) football.</i>

For more than two people or things

Most Most of	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> They have a positive meaning and go with a plural verb. 	<i>Most young people like surfing the Net.</i> <i>Most of my friends live in Athens.</i>
All All of	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All + that-clause + singular verb = The only thing... 	<i>All of them enjoy picnics.</i> <i>All (that) he does is criticise me.</i>
None	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None has a negative meaning. It is not followed by a noun. 	<i>Any questions? No, none.</i>
None of	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None of is used before nouns or object pronouns with a singular or plural verb. 	<i>None of the students speaks/speak German.</i> <i>None of them wants/want to leave.</i>

note

Whole (=complete) goes between a determiner and a singular countable noun.
She spent the whole evening talking on the phone.

Grammar Practice

A Circle the correct answers.

1. Tony: Does **anyone / someone** need the car for the next hour? I need to go **anywhere / somewhere**.
Michael: No, I don't.
Darren: Neither do I. I've got **anywhere / nowhere** to go, so take it. But on your way back, could you get **each one of / everyone** us an ice cream?
2. Luke: You sit in the sun nearly **every / each** day. Aren't you worried about getting burnt?
Mark: Oh, I never stay in the sun for too long and I always put on **any / some** suntan lotion.
3. Catherine: I haven't had **anything / something** to eat today.
Alice: I'm so hungry that I could eat **something / everything** on the table.
Catherine: We can eat as much as we like. **Every / Everyone** else has eaten.
4. Receptionist: Are you looking for **someone / no one**?
Woman: Yes, I am. Mrs Byrne.
Receptionist: Let's see...Oh yes, she's on the third floor, in room 309.
Woman: Could you also tell me what the morning visiting hours are?
Receptionist: You can visit patients in this hospital at **any / no** time as long as it's not after midnight!
5. Salesperson: **Each / Every** of these cars has air-conditioning.
Customer: Do all of them have airbags?
Salesperson: No, not **each / every** car has an airbag.

B Circle the correct answers.

1. **Many / Much** people showed up at the fundraising event.
2. **Few / Little** people go mountaineering during the winter.
3. There's very **little / a little** time left to get ready for the wedding ceremony.
4. You needn't apply any more suntan lotion; you've got **plenty of / plenty** on.
5. There is **a lot of / a lot** traffic on the motorway.
6. You didn't make **much / many** serious mistakes in the test, but you should be more careful with your spelling.
7. We've only got **a little / a few** petrol left. We'd better stop at the next petrol station.
8. We need to get **a few / few** stamps from the post office. I want to send off some letters.
9. I couldn't find **many / much** information on ancient Greek art in my encyclopaedia. I'll go to the library.
10. How **much / many** bread do you want me to buy?

C Complete using **both, either, neither, all, none or whole**.

1. I can't wear _____ of these two jumpers. _____ of them need washing.
2. Some siamese twins have to spend their _____ life joined together.
3. You can eat _____ of these two small pies but leave the big one for John.
4. I don't think the address I have is correct. I've sent him several letters but I've received _____ in return.
5. _____ of the children in my class are starting to learn another language and they find it very enjoyable.

6. After she had talked to her two older sisters, she told _____ of them that she appreciated their advice but that she would do what she thought was right.
7. _____ of my two brothers can drive us to school because they're at work.
8. I had an awful Sunday. I spent the _____ day cleaning.
9. Tanya, Robert, Craig and I are coming to visit you. Don't cook anything because we had a big lunch and _____ of us are hungry.
10. Sally has been ill _____ week. I hope she starts feeling better soon.

D Choose the correct answers. Sometimes both answers may be correct.

1. Both students _____ well at school.
a. do b. does
2. Either dress _____ fine.
a. is b. are
3. Everybody _____ wearing formal evening clothes.
a. is b. are
4. Each room of the house _____ painted a different colour.
a. were b. was
5. Neither of them _____ Spanish very well.
a. speak b. speaks
6. Nobody _____ arrived, so we can't start the meeting yet.
a. has b. have
7. All Derek does _____ complain.
a. are b. is
8. None of us _____ a car, so let's rent one.
a. has b. have

E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. It's unbelievable, but not a single shirt in that shop suited me.
none It's unbelievable, but _____ in that shop suited me.
2. This restaurant doesn't have any English-speaking waiters.
no There _____ in this restaurant.
3. She was doing her shopping all afternoon.
the She spent _____ doing her shopping.
4. I thought that both novels were boring at the beginning.
neither I thought that _____ at the beginning.
5. Mark, the only thing you do is surf the Net!
all Mark, _____ the Net!
6. There aren't a lot of things to do in a village.
much There _____ in a village.
7. I always take my sunglasses with me wherever I go.
never I _____ my sunglasses.
8. Jim bought two books last week, but he hasn't started reading them yet.
of Jim hasn't started reading _____ he bought last week.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

- knock down:** (1) hit sb (with a vehicle) and cause them to fall down
 (2) pull down a building or part of it
- knock out:** make sb unconscious
- knock over:** hit sb (with a vehicle) and cause them to fall down
- leave out:** not include
- let down:** disappoint sb
- lock out:** prevent sb from entering by locking the doors
- lock up:** (1) place sth somewhere and fasten the lock
 (2) make sure that all the doors and windows of a building or a car are locked

- If you don't like garlic, _____ it _____ of the recipe.
- Don't forget to _____ when you leave the house.
- My best friend has never _____ me _____. She's always there for me when I need her.
- I heard that the City Council has decided to _____ that old building and build a car park in its place.
- The boxer _____ his opponent in the second round.
- The driver didn't see the man crossing the street and _____ him _____.
- I accidentally _____ the cat last night, so it slept on the front doormat.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

NOT FOR THE FAINT-HEARTED!

Sky-diving isn't something new, but (1) _____ cameramen jumping out of planes with all the necessary (2) _____ to film a sky-diver, is. The cameramen are not, of course, totally (3) _____, as they go through a rigorous (4) _____ programme to make sure they stay safe. After a lot of (5) _____ and careful planning, this amazing idea was put into practice so that judges could observe the sky-divers' (6) _____ manoeuvres from the ground. Then they judge them accordingly in (7) _____. Although they are far away, they can see what is happening at a (8) _____ of over 10,000 feet! The pictures are shown on huge screens on the ground for the judges. Crowds gather and look on with obvious (9) _____ and a sense of (10) _____ at seeing such a dangerous sport in action.

- COURAGE**
EQUIP
EXPERIENCE
TRAIN
THINK
SKILL
COMPETE
HIGH
CURIOS
AMAZE

C Complete using the words given.

- behaviour** (n): social conduct, the way a person or an animal behaves
- manner** (n): the way sb does sth
- manners** (n): social conduct
- habit** (n): sth you do often or regularly
- routine** (n): the usual series of things sb does regularly at a particular time

- He was impolite and had bad _____, as he spoke with his mouth full.
- Clients trust Mr Parker as he always deals with them in a very professional _____.
- The cat's strange _____ made us realise that something was wrong.
- When I'm nervous, I am in the _____ of biting my nail.
- Part of our daily _____ includes a jog before breakfast.

1. "V" ..
 2. Y ..
 3. T ..
 4. a ..
 5. "S" ..
 6. T ..
 7. M ..
 8. C ..
 9. T ..
 10. I ..
 11. D ..
 12. N ..
 13. I ..
 14. T ..
 15. A ..
- B U ..
 1. O ..
 2. N ..
 3. T ..

| Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. "Who is it?"
"_____ Jenny."
 a. My b. I'm c. It's d. Mine
2. You should see Luke play _____ tennis!
 a. - b. the c. some d. a
3. There's _____ freshly squeezed orange juice in the fridge if you're thirsty.
 a. a b. some c. one d. little
4. _____ can come to the youth club. You don't need to be a member.
 a. Someone b. Every c. Each one d. Anyone
5. "Saturday or Sunday"?
"_____ day is fine. Come whenever you like."
 a. Neither b. Either c. Both d. None
6. They had _____ ashtrays on the table.
 a. two square glass b. square two glass c. glass square two d. two glass square
7. My nephews speak Italian really _____.
 a. good b. better c. well d. best
8. Coffee is cheap at this supermarket but it costs even _____ at Save Supermarket.
 a. least b. more little c. little d. less
9. There is _____ food left but not enough for everyone.
 a. little b. a little c. few d. a few
10. I have never seen _____ tall building as that before.
 a. a so b. a more c. such a d. a such
11. Don't forget to buy a _____ of toothpaste for the trip.
 a. can b. tube c. carton d. pint
12. Neither Julie nor Sue _____ to work today because they are both ill.
 a. goes b. isn't going c. aren't going d. is going
13. If you require any _____, please contact my secretary.
 a. further information b. further informations c. farther information d. farther informations
14. The _____ we work out, _____ we become.
 a. most ... the fitter b. more ... the more fitter c. more ... the fitter d. more ... the fittest
15. All he does is _____ all day long.
 a. to sleep b. sleeping c. sleeps d. sleep

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. On Sunday nights, the roads into Athens are very busy.
traffic There _____ on the roads into Athens on Sunday nights.
2. None of these books are more informative than the encyclopaedia.
most The encyclopaedia _____ of all these books.
3. The attic doesn't have any windows.
no There _____ in the attic.

4. The mechanic made a careful inspection of the car to see what was wrong with it.
inspected The mechanic _____ to see what was wrong with it.
5. I attended a course at Kent College for two months.
on I went _____ at Kent College.
6. I can't live in such a small flat.
as I can't live in _____ this.
7. In my opinion, both hotels are expensive, so let's find another one.
cheap In my opinion, _____, so let's find another one.
8. I don't think that Japanese is easy to learn.
language I don't think that _____ is easy to learn.

B Con

1. We _____
2. It is _____
3. Ever _____
4. Ente _____
5. Desp _____
6. We c _____
7. His _____
8. She _____

Vocabulary Practice**A Choose the correct answers.**

1. _____ the grass!
 - a. Go out
 - b. Keep off
 - c. Move out
 - d. Pull over
2. Please don't _____ the phone on me again!
 - a. hand in
 - b. hang out
 - c. hang up
 - d. hang on
3. We didn't have to pay for the furniture in _____ but on the day of delivery.
 - a. time
 - b. advance
 - c. cash
 - d. future
4. My children have excellent table _____.
 - a. manners
 - b. manner
 - c. behaviour
 - d. habits
5. You can't _____ traffic in the city centre in the afternoon, so why don't you go in the morning?
 - a. prevent
 - b. miss
 - c. avoid
 - d. lack
6. _____ flowers are usually made of plastic or silk.
 - a. Artificial
 - b. Untrue
 - c. False
 - d. Unreal
7. He never _____ he is wrong.
 - a. admits
 - b. reveals
 - c. confesses
 - d. agree
8. I _____ the art competition because of the exams.
 - a. lost
 - b. loss
 - c. missed
 - d. loose
9. The teacher needs to _____ the class into two to play the game.
 - a. decrease
 - b. divide
 - c. reduce
 - d. shortage
10. The government _____ the name of the spy last night.
 - a. admitted
 - b. agreed
 - c. confessed
 - d. revealed
11. Jenny is Korean, so she cooks _____ Korean food.
 - a. authentic
 - b. imitation
 - c. artificial
 - d. original
12. We decided to _____ our old house and build a new one.
 - a. knock over
 - b. knock down
 - c. knock out
 - d. let down
13. That scarf really _____ that dress! It's a perfect match.
 - a. goes up
 - b. goes with
 - c. goes over
 - d. goes on
14. Can you clean the kitchen _____ to the bathroom?
 - a. in advance
 - b. in case
 - c. in addition
 - d. in charge
15. The reception took place _____ Saturday.
 - a. on
 - b. in
 - c. at
 - d. by

C Con

- Roller-c _____
 Some p _____
 for their _____
 "sickeni _____
 (3) _____
 rides se _____
 Besides _____
 (8) _____

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. We shouldn't hire such a young and _____ man for a job as difficult as this one.
2. It is said that electricity is the greatest _____.
3. Everybody liked the book and the critics said that it was definitely a _____.
4. Entering the burning house to save the little boy was a very _____ thing to do.
5. Despite their terrifying appearance, most dinosaurs were _____ vegetarians.
6. We didn't find our trip _____ although it was raining.
7. His _____ to the news was unpredictable.
8. She looked at me in _____.

EXPERIENCE
INVENT
SUCCEED
COURAGE
HARM
PLEASE
REACT
AMAZE

C Complete using only one word in each blank.

Roller-coasters have been around for over one hundred years and their popularity is constantly increasing.

Some people are crazy about roller-coasters and travel around (1) _____ world to try out new rides famous for their speed, length or height. They love the feeling of not being (2) _____ control, the speed and the "sickening" feeling in their stomach. Some roller-coasters are made of pine wood. These rides feel (3) _____ safe because the track shakes and makes (4) _____ lot of noise. As a result, the rides seem (5) _____ dangerous. However, they are just (6) _____ safe as steel frame ones. Besides, all roller-coasters are equipped with safety bars which people hold (7) _____ to and which can (8) _____ riders from falling off.

13 Pronouns - Possessives

A. Personal Pronouns

Personal Pronouns replace nouns and are used as subjects (**I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they**) or objects (**me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them**) of verbs. *John is my cousin. He lives next door. Have you seen him lately?*

Pronouns	Use	Examples
He/Him She/Her	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> for people, babies and animals if we know their gender ► She/her can also be used for ships and countries. 	<i>Don't go near that cat; he could scratch you.</i> <i>The large cruise ship looked impressive as she steamed out of the harbour.</i>
It	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> for things, babies and animals (if the gender is unknown or unimportant) in expressions of time, distance, weather and temperature when we are asking or saying who a person is at the beginning of a sentence, instead of a full infinitive or a that-clause as the subject of the verbs appear, depend, happen, look, occur, seem, sound, etc. 	<i>It's a really cute baby.</i> <i>It's twelve o'clock.</i> <i>It was very cold last winter.</i> <i>Who is it? It's Mary.</i> <i>It is not wise to lend money to strangers.</i> <i>It seems that he is not having fun tonight.</i>

note

- **It takes + (object) + time expression + full infinitive**

It took an hour to drive to the airport.

- **Subject + take + time expression + full infinitive**

Anne will take at least two hours to iron these clothes.

- **There + be** is used for something we mention for the first time.

It + be/other verb is used for something that has already been mentioned.

There was a letter for you this morning. It is on your desk.

B. Possessive Adjectives

Possessive Adjectives (**my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their**) are always used before a noun (without an article). They have the same number and gender as the owner. *my parents, her bicycle, their clothes*

note

- If we want to emphasise that something belongs to only one person, we use **my/your, etc. + own + noun**.

They have their own flat.

- **on my/your/his, etc. own = alone, without help**

Mary does her homework on her own.

C. Possessive Pronouns

Possessive Pronouns (**mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs**) replace **my/your, etc. + noun**. They are never followed by nouns. *Shall we take your car or mine?*

note

- **A/an + noun + of + mine/yours, etc. = one of + my/your, etc. + noun**

a friend of mine = one of my friends

Possessive case

Form	Use	Examples
's	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> singular nouns (people or animals) someone/somebody, anyone, etc. irregular plural nouns (not ending in -s) compound nouns 	<i>Tim's computer, the cat's collar</i> <i>It's nobody's fault.</i> <i>the children's clothes</i> <i>my father-in-law's car</i>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> time expressions/idioms When two or more people own something in common, 's is added to the last noun. When two or more people own different things, 's is added to each noun. 	<i>today's weather, last Sunday's newspapers</i>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> regular plural nouns Nouns ending in -s in the singular (especially names) take both 's and '. 	<i>John and Mark's car</i>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> things, abstract nouns, animals (sometimes) We can use of for people, only in long phrases. For places and organisations we can use of or 's. 	<i>George's and Andrew's desks</i>
of + noun	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> things, abstract nouns, animals (sometimes) We can use of for people, only in long phrases. For places and organisations we can use of or 's. 	<i>my parents' bedroom James's / James' shoes</i>

D. Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns are: **myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.**

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> with the verbs behave, cut, educate, enjoy, help, hurt, kill, like, teach, etc. if the subject and the object of the verb are the same after certain verbs with prepositions (talk to, say to, take care of, etc.) after the verbs look, seem, etc. to describe emotions or behaviour 	<i>He has taught himself how to use the computer.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> for emphasis (emphatic pronouns); they are placed after the subject or the object of the verb, or at the end of the sentence. 	<i>He was sitting in the dark, talking to himself.</i>
<p>by + reflexive pronoun = alone, without help</p> <p>Reflexive pronouns are not normally used:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> with the verbs concentrate, relax, rest. with verbs describing actions that people usually do for themselves (wash, dress, shave, wake up, etc.). after prepositions of place. 	<i>You don't look yourself today; is there anything wrong?</i>
	<i>The President himself visited the hospital.</i>
	<i>The scouts built this boat by themselves.</i>
	<i>You have to concentrate more.</i>
	<i>She got up, washed her face and had breakfast.</i>
	<i>He was watching the man in front of him.</i>

note

- Reflexive pronouns are used after certain verbs to form idioms:
 - enjoy yourself** = have a good time
 - behave yourself** = be good
 - help yourself to (sth)** = you are welcome to have an amount of sth
 - make yourself at home** = make yourself comfortable
 - make yourself heard/understood** = speak loudly/clearly
- Note the difference between **themselves** and **each other** = (one another), both referring to two people.

They were looking at themselves in the mirror.

They were just sitting there, looking at each other.

E. Other Pronouns

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> One-Ones are used if we do not want to repeat a countable noun. <p><i>Would you like the green sweater or the blue one? Where are the glasses? I need some tall ones.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Other means "more" or "different". the other(s) = the rest others = more, apart from those already mentioned every other day/week, etc. = every second day/week, etc. the other day = a few days ago another = one more. It can also go with expressions of time, distance or money. <p><i>I'd like another glass of orange juice. We must drive for another ten miles.</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Question word + ever (whoever, whatever, wherever, whenever, however, whichever) = any person, thing, place, time, etc. <p><i>Wherever you hide, they will find you.</i></p>	

Grammar Practice

A Circle the correct answers.

Little White Lies

(1) **It / There** is difficult to admit (2) **itself / it**, but most of (3) **our / us** tell lies now and again. There is the social lie, (*How nice to see (4) **you / yourself**, ...oh and (5) **me / I** love that new hairstyle of (6) **yours / your** ...*), the white lie (*Sorry (7) **I / my** can't come to (8) **you / your** house because (9) **myself / I** am having guests (10) **themselves / myself** ...*) and the lie that makes life easier (11) (***I / Me** have no idea how that report got on (12) **mine / my** desk, sir*).

Most forms of lying are innocent and involve a harmless desire to make (13) **us** / **our** lives easier. But (14) **it** / **its** depends on how much (15) **we** / **us** lie. Some people spend (16) **them** / **their** whole life deceiving others.

Marvin, for example, is a compulsive liar. (17) **It / He** has always enjoyed gossiping with (18) **his / he** friends about other people. (19) **He / Himself** starts out with something which is true and comes out with a totally different story, using that great imagination of (20) **himself / his**. Marvin's need for attention drives (21) **him / he** to lying.

But let's not kid (22) **ourselves / us**. Lying is a really bad habit. (23) **Yourselves / You** all know the story of the little boy who cried "Wolf!" too many times and then found (24) **him / himself** being ignored when the wolf (25) **itself / itself** came.

B Complete using the words in brackets and the Possessive Case.

1. Keeping the environment clean should be (the concern/everyone) _____
 2. Both (the essays/Craig and John) _____ were detailed and very well-written.
 3. Baby kangaroos live in (the pouch/the mother) _____ for about eight months.
 4. Those are (the children/our next door neighbour) _____.
 5. (the parents/the children) _____ are going to (the office/the principal) _____.
 6. (the room/Christine and Michelle) _____ needs painting.
 7. (the newspapers/last week) _____ contained a lot of information about the Internet.
 8. (the cover/this book) _____ is falling apart.

C Choose the correct answers.

1. Your cat is so tame and friendly. _____ is completely wild and won't let anyone come near her.
a. Us b. Ours c. Our

2. _____ I bumped into our old friend Margaret Stanton.
a. The other day b. Another day c. Every other day

3. **Alex:** Are you going to wear the blue or the grey suit to the interview?
Tom: The _____.
a. blue one b. other blue c. blue ones

4. **Mark:** Who's at the door, Jack?
Jack: _____ Jim.
a. He's b. His c. It's

5. I go to aerobic classes _____ day.
a. the other b. every other c. another

6. We made this bookcase by _____. Do you like it?
a. us b. ourselves c. ours

7. Children never listen! I've warned _____ about the dangers of playing with matches but they just ignore me.
a. themselves b. theirs c. them

8. I always look at _____ in the mirror before I leave the house.
a. myself b. me c. mine

9. Paul and Justin are here. The _____ are waiting in the car.
a. ones b. others c. other

10. Does Kelly live on _____ own?
a. hers b. herself c. her

11. We worked for _____ two hours and then stopped to eat something.
a. other b. another c. more

12. Brian wrote the article _____.
a. his own b. himself c. him

13. I had an accident with my bike and now _____ handlebars are crooked.
a. its b. it c. it's

14. Jane sat next to _____ on the bus and we chatted all the way home.
a. myself b. mine c. me

15. We helped _____ with the school project.
a. ourselves b. each other c. us

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. She has known him for five years.
other They have known _____ for five years.

2. This pen belongs to another person, but I used it by mistake.
someone I used _____ by mistake.

3. No one helped me repair the roof, you know.
by I repaired the roof _____, you know.

4. He prefers to live alone rather than share a flat.
his He prefers to live _____ rather than share a flat.

5. I heard that they are all going to receive an award for bravery.
each I heard that _____ going to receive an award for bravery.

6. If you go by train, you'll be in Brighton in six hours.
take It _____ to get to Brighton by train.

7. Graham Bell was the man who invented the telephone, wasn't he?
inventor Graham Bell was _____, wasn't he?

8. It was a great get-together and we had a good time.
enjoyed It was a great get-together and _____ a lot.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using prepositions.

- My parents were disappointed _____ me when they saw the marks I got in the final exam.
- Customers are not satisfied _____ this product. It causes allergic reactions.
- Graham Bell is famous _____ inventing the telephone.
- Steve complained to the manager _____ the poor service in the restaurant.
- I'm tired _____ all the work I'm expected to do while others sit around doing nothing.
- I was very impressed _____ the way things were run at that school.
- I'm really bored _____ my routine. I should take up a new hobby.
- Chocolate ice cream is popular _____ most children.
- Kate was annoyed _____ me because I arrived late.
- The President was upset _____ the violent demonstration held outside the Parliament.
- I'm fed up _____ your excuses for not doing any work!
- I disapprove _____ your staying out so late.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

A HANGOUT

I (1) _____ meet my friends at the local fast food restaurant. It's an (2) _____ meeting place as there is lots of space in the summer and provides welcome (3) _____ during those cold winter afternoons. Also, if you feel like a snack, (4) _____ fast food (which my mum really hates and always calls (5) _____) is available. So, it's a (6) _____ place to chat. Young people, like me, need a place to go and talk. We usually talk about our interests and hobbies, mine being (7) _____. Our behaviour is typical of many teenagers, I suppose. However, my parents think I go out too often. Luckily, though, after many (8) _____ they have begun to accept my (9) _____ that young people need to find ways to have fun, socialise and relieve their (10) _____, especially if they live in a small town like I do.

NORMAL

IDEA

WARM

TASTE

POISON

COMFORT

PHOTO

ARGUE

EXPLAIN

BORE

C Complete using the words given.

usual (adj): happening most often in a particular situation

normal (adj): regular, ordinary, in accordance with what people expect

common (adj): ordinary, frequently encountered or often happening

raise (v): (raise-raised-raised) lift sth, move it to a higher position (transitive)

rise (v): (rise-rose-risen) move upwards, stand up (intransitive)

arise (v): (arise-arose-arisen) begin to exist or become known to people (for a situation or problem)

1. Hans is a very _____ German name.

2. Despite his disability, he leads a _____ life.

3. Waiter, I'll have my _____ drink.

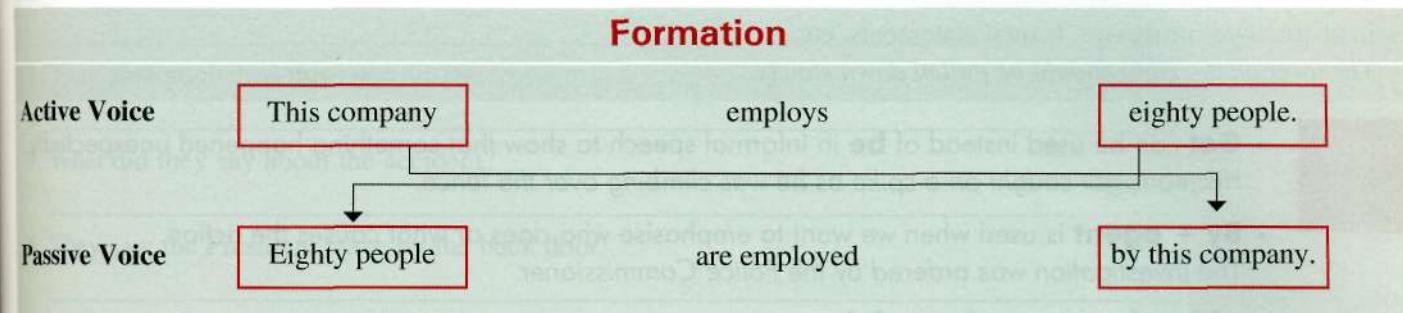
4. No problems will _____ as long as you have organised the trip well.

5. Those of you in favour of the proposal, please _____ your hands.

6. We watched the hot-air balloon _____ into the sky.

14 Passive Voice

The Passive Voice stresses the action itself, not who or what caused it. Only **transitive** verbs (=verbs with an object) can be used in the passive.



Verb forms in the Passive Voice

Verb Forms	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present Simple	<i>They always serve tea with cakes.</i>	<i>Tea is always served with cakes (by them).</i>
Present Progressive	<i>They are renovating the hotel.</i>	<i>The hotel is being renovated.</i>
Past Simple	<i>I repaired the roof last year.</i>	<i>The roof was repaired (by me) last year.</i>
Past Progressive	<i>The scouts were pitching the tents when it started to rain.</i>	<i>The tents were being pitched by the scouts when it started to rain.</i>
Present Perfect Simple	<i>We have removed all the furniture from the living room.</i>	<i>All the furniture has been removed from the living room.</i>
Past Perfect Simple	<i>The fire had destroyed the house before the fire brigade arrived.</i>	<i>The house had been destroyed by the fire before the fire brigade arrived.</i>
Future "Will"	<i>Mary will pay the bill tomorrow.</i>	<i>The bill will be paid (by Mary) tomorrow.</i>
Going to	<i>They are going to publish his new novel next month.</i>	<i>His new novel is going to be published next month.</i>
Future Perfect Simple	<i>I will have posted all the letters by noon.</i>	<i>All the letters will have been posted by noon.</i>
Present Infinitive	<i>We need to finish this work by tomorrow.</i>	<i>This work needs to be finished by tomorrow.</i>
Perfect Infinitive	<i>He could have bought the tickets earlier.</i>	<i>The tickets could have been bought earlier.</i>
-ing form	<i>I hate people staring at me.</i>	<i>I hate being stared at.</i>
Modal Verbs	<i>You must take him to hospital.</i>	<i>He must be taken to hospital.</i>
Imperative	<i>Please complete this exercise.</i>	<i>This exercise must / should be completed.</i>

note

The Present, Past and Future Perfect Progressive and the Future Progressive are **not** used in the Passive Voice.

Use

We use the Passive Voice:

- when the agent (the person performing the action) is unknown, unimportant or obvious from the context.
This portrait was painted before the 17th century.
The environment is being polluted more and more every day.
- when we want to emphasise the action itself, not the agent.
Eight people were injured in a car accident.
- in instructions, processes, formal statements, etc.
The lever on the right should be pulled down slowly.

note

- **Get** can be used instead of **be** in informal speech to show that something happened unexpectedly.
His jeans got caught on a spike as he was climbing over the fence.
- **By + agent** is used when we want to emphasise who does or what causes the action.
The investigation was ordered by the Police Commissioner.
- **with + instrument/material** [] - describe what caused the action or what the agent used to perform
of + material
This photograph was taken with an expensive camera.
The basement was flooded with water. *This cardigan is made of wool.*

Note the following changes:

Active Voice	Passive Voice	Examples
Verbs with two objects	Both the indirect object (person) and the direct object (thing) can be used as subjects of a Passive sentence.	<i>He gave his wife a rose. →</i> <i>His wife was given a rose. or</i> <i>A rose was given to his wife.</i>
Question words (what, who, when, where, why, how)	Question Word + Auxiliary/Modal Verb + Subject + Past Participle • With who and whom we never omit by .	<i>Who wrote this play? →</i> <i>Who was this play written by? (informal)</i> <i>By whom was this play written? (formal)</i>
not...any not...any of not...anyone/anybody not...anything	→ no none of no one / nobody nothing	<i>They didn't change anything. →</i> <i>Nothing was changed.</i>
make hear help see, etc.	+ bare infinitive make hear help see, etc. } + full infinitive	<i>John made me leave. →</i> <i>I was made to leave (by John).</i>
let	be allowed to • When "let" has other meanings, it does not change in the Passive.	<i>They didn't let me go to Peter's house. –</i> <i>I was not allowed to go to Peter's house.</i> <i>You mustn't let the cat in your room. –</i> <i>The cat mustn't be let in your room.</i>
believe, consider, expect, find, hope, know, report, say, think, understand, etc.	• It + passive form of verb + that... (impersonal construction) • Subject + passive form of verb + full infinitive (personal construction)	<i>Scientists believe that this virus is deadly. →</i> <i>It is believed that this virus is deadly. @</i> <i>This virus is believed to be deadly.</i>
Verbs with prepositions	The preposition goes immediately after the verb.	<i>A car nearly knocked Jane down this morning. →</i> <i>Jane was nearly knocked down by a car this morning.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Rewrite the following sentences using the Passive Voice. More than one answer is possible in some cases.

1. Everyone knows that fruit and vegetables are high in water content.

2. Mr and Mrs Philips didn't buy anything from the supermarket.

3. They first published this book in 1867.

4. What did they say about the accident?

5. They saw the President leave by the back door.

6. The nurse gave the patient a robe to put on.

7. The waiters didn't seat any of the guests till after the orchestra played the national anthem.

8. Mike will send flowers to Bob, who is in hospital.

9. The government provided the refugees with food.

10. Who designed this building?

11. The painter is spraying paint on the door with a spray gun.

12. The hurricane has totally destroyed the town.

13. We could have taken the car to the garage today.

14. The children are going to organise a fundraising event.

15. Local authorities hope that people will recycle more of their rubbish.

B Complete using the Active or the Passive Voice of the verbs in brackets.

1. Yesterday, Kelly _____ (think) that she _____ (follow), so she _____ (go) to the nearest police station.

2. We _____ (stay) with my parents because our house _____ (renovate) at the moment.

3. Two new schools _____ (build) in our area because of the growth in population. Building _____ (start) next month.

4. The tables _____ (clean) by the waiters when a group of tourists _____ (arrive).

5. More chocolate bars _____ (consume) this year than in any other year.

6. My car _____ (repair) by the mechanic yesterday but unfortunately I _____ (crash) it into a tree this morning.

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. People believe that the chairman of the committee is involved in the scandal.
be The chairman of the committee _____ in the scandal.
2. She misses her friends visiting her in the evenings.
visited She misses _____ in the evenings.
3. Why did they turn down our offer, Mr Steinberg?
turned Why _____, Mr Steinberg?
4. The teacher didn't let us leave before we finished the essay.
allowed We _____ before we finished the essay.
5. Nobody in my class can solve this Maths problem.
solved This Maths problem _____ in my class.
6. They were giving the baby a bath when I arrived.
given The baby _____ a bath when I arrived.
7. You know, people say that the Minister of Education is going to resign.
is You know, _____ the Minister of Education is going to resign.
8. Karen would have sent me a letter if she had known my address.
been I _____ a letter by Karen if she had known my address.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

look after:	take care of sb or sth
look forward to:	expect sth to happen because you think you will enjoy it
look into:	investigate, examine in detail
look over:	examine sth in order to get a general idea of it
look up:	try to find information in a book or list

1. Students should have a dictionary to _____ unknown words.
2. We are all _____ going on holiday.
3. _____ old people isn't an easy job, but it's very rewarding.
4. The manager briefly _____ his notes before the meeting.
5. We must _____ the matter before making a decision.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

VISITING DUBAI

Dubai is a very popular tourist (1) _____. The emirate of Dubai is well-known for its (2) _____ skyscrapers. Their design is quite (3) _____ and about 63 of them stand taller than 200 metres. The tallest among these buildings is Burj Khalifa, the tallest structure in the world at 828m. The (4) _____ of what the building offers is amazing. There are 900 private (5) _____ flats, an Armani hotel on 15 floors and 3 swimming pools. The design of the building has a lot of (6) _____ elements which include both modern and (7) _____ features of local and international importance. In (8) _____, an outdoor (9) _____ deck with the Behold Telescope, offers (10) _____ the opportunity to view the surrounding landscape and this is very popular among all Burj Khalifa's visitors.

ATTRACT

IMPRESS

ORIGIN

DESCRIBE

RESIDENT

CULTURE

HISTORY

ADD

OBSERVE

VISIT

C Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

in future:	in the time to come
in general:	generally
in a hurry:	needing to do sth quickly loving sb or sth
in love (with):	
in a good/bad mood:	feeling cheerful/ angry and impatient
in one's opinion:	according to what sb thinks about sth
in order/a mess:	tidy/untidy
in pain:	feeling pain
in particular:	particularly, especially
in person:	personally
in pieces:	broken up into small parts

1. Pam left the office _____. She had a train to catch.
2. The estate agent said that _____ the house was in a good condition.
3. Mrs Kay loves animals, _____ cats.
4. You're late! _____, please try to be on time for our meetings.
5. Model aeroplanes come _____, which you put together yourself.
6. Jenny was _____ after the accident.
7. I'm always _____ when it rains. It makes me miserable.
8. Mr Fane keeps his office _____. He is very tidy.
9. I'd rather meet my clients _____ than speak to them over the phone.
10. _____, we should sell the flat and buy a house.
11. I fell _____ with the island and decided to live there.

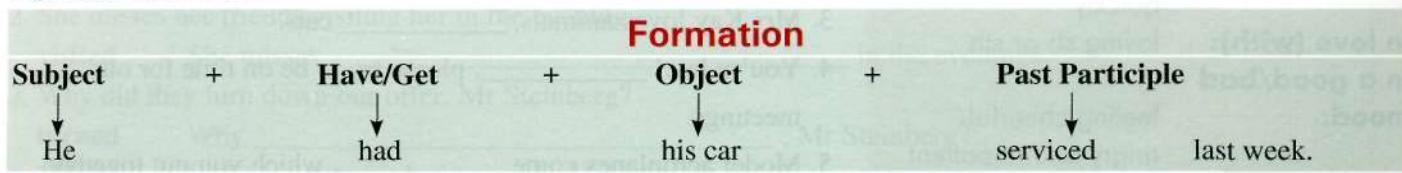
D Complete using the words given.

persist (in) (v):	go on doing sth despite having difficulties
insist (on) (v):	say or demand sth very firmly and not change your mind about it
resist (v):	(1) refuse to accept sth (2) stop yourself from doing sth although you would like to do it
tough (adj):	(1) rough, violent (2) difficult to do or deal with
hard (adj):	(1) not soft or smooth (2) difficult to understand or do, requiring considerable effort to be accomplished
demanding (adj):	requiring a lot of time, effort, energy or attention
beside (prep):	next to
besides (prep):	in addition to

1. I _____ you stay and have dinner with us.
2. Why do you _____ in finishing the reports even though it's late?
3. I ate up the cake. I just couldn't _____ it.
4. Al Capone had killed many people and was considered a _____ criminal.
5. Children require a lot of care and guidance, that's why being a parent is very _____.
6. The whole project requires a lot of _____ work.
7. _____ Katie, I've also invited Jenny to dinner.
8. Please, place a glass _____ every plate.

15 Causative Form

The Causative Form is used when we do not do something ourselves, but we arrange for someone else (usually an expert) to do it for us.



Verb forms in the Causative Form

Verb forms	Active Voice	Causative Form
Present Simple	We paint the house every year.	We have the house painted every year.
Present Progressive	Bruce is washing his car.	Bruce is having his car washed.
Past Simple	He typed three letters yesterday.	He had three letters typed yesterday.
Past Progressive	She was cleaning the carpet when I arrived.	She was having the carpet cleaned when I arrived.
Future "Will"	We will install the lights next week.	We will have the lights installed next week.
Future Progressive	I'll be planting some trees in the garden tomorrow morning.	I'll be having some trees planted in the garden tomorrow morning.
Present Perfect Simple	The boys have repaired their bicycles.	The boys have had their bicycles repaired.
Present Perfect Progressive	We've been importing clothes from Italy since we opened the shop.	We've been having clothes imported from Italy since we opened the shop.
Past Perfect Simple	He had organised the meeting before I called.	He had had the meeting organised before I called.
Past Perfect Progressive	They had been photocopying a book when the manager arrived.	They had been having a book photocopied when the manager arrived.
Present Infinitive	He managed to repair the roof.	He managed to have the roof repaired.
-ing form	I remember taking my blood pressure.	I remember having my blood pressure taken.
Modal verbs	You should fix the leakage in the tank.	You should have the leakage in the tank fixed.
Imperative	Clean the table, please.	Have the table cleaned, please.

note

- Questions and negations are formed as in the Active Voice: with the auxiliaries **do/does** in the Present Simple and **did** in the Past Simple.
When did you last have your eyes tested?
- We can use **get** instead of **have**, especially in informal style.
I have to get the house painted this year.
- The Causative Form is often used instead of the Passive Voice to express an accident, a misfortune or something that had not been arranged:
They had their house broken into last week.
Mark had his leg broken in the car crash.
- If we want to mention who performs the action, we can add **by+agent** at the end of the sentence.
She always has her hair dyed by a hairdresser.

- **make/have someone do something** = cause someone to do something (but there is a slight difference in meaning)
Mrs Smith made her daughter do the shopping. (=She insisted that her daughter should do the shopping.)
Mrs Smith had her daughter do the shopping. (=She asked her daughter to do the shopping.)
- **get someone to do something** = persuade someone to do something
Mrs Smith got her daughter to do the shopping. (=She persuaded her daughter to do the shopping.)

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- Brian will _____ by the dentist tomorrow.
 - get his teeth polished
 - polish his teeth
 - have his teeth polish
- When _____ your new carpet fitted?
 - had you
 - did you have
 - you had
- He often _____ at the dry cleaner's.
 - has his suits cleaned
 - has cleaned his suits
 - cleans his suits
- Debbie knows how to sew and _____ herself.
 - has all her clothes made
 - gets all her clothes made
 - makes all her clothes
- Please, _____ the accounts checked by the accountant first thing tomorrow morning.
 - you have
 - have
 - will have
- Jake _____ his passport renewed last week.
 - didn't have
 - hadn't
 - not had
- We postponed _____ because we didn't have enough money.
 - having painted our house
 - have painted our house
 - having our house painted
- She _____ while shopping yesterday.
 - had stolen her wallet
 - stole her wallet
 - had her wallet stolen
- The teacher _____ the board.
 - had John clean
 - had John cleaned
 - had John to clean
- If you feel dizzy, you should _____.
 - your blood pressure have checked
 - have your blood pressure checked
 - checked your blood pressure
- I always _____ to my friends living abroad because I like to keep in touch with them.
 - have e-mails sent
 - send e-mails
 - sending e-mails
- I would like to _____ for me, as I'm an awful cook.
 - have my cooking done
 - having my cooking done
 - have done my cooking
- Macey _____ her with her Maths exercises.
 - got me help
 - got me helped
 - got me to help
- _____ your newspaper delivered to your house every morning?
 - Have
 - Do you have
 - Do you

B Complete using the Active Voice or the Causative Form of the words given.

1. Mr Fane: Are you using the computer?

Mr Parker: Yes, I _____ (my letters / type) at the moment.

Mr Fane: Do you type all your letters yourself?

Mr Parker: No, I don't have the time to do that. I usually _____ (my letters / type) by my secretary, but he's away today.

2. Mike: I _____ (my car / service) by the mechanic yesterday. The bad thing is that I had to pay quite a lot of money for it.

Luke: Didn't you know that my brother is training to become a mechanic? He always _____ (my car / service) for me. Maybe he could have a look at yours next time, too.

3. Tanya: What are you doing? _____ you _____ (the house / paint) yourself?

Brenda: No, of course not. I _____ (the house / paint) by a painter. I'm just helping him. Do you want to come in and have a look?

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Please, arrange for these parcels to be posted as soon as possible.

have Please, _____ as soon as possible.

2. My car will need servicing before I go on holiday.

get I'll need _____ before I go on holiday.

3. Someone broke Gary's front teeth while he was playing football.

had Gary _____ while he was playing football.

4. Carl eventually agreed to lend me his motorbike for the day.

got I eventually _____ his motorbike for the day.

5. A plumber is repairing my dishwasher this afternoon.

repaired I _____ this afternoon.

6. Kelly, does the cleaner clean your house twice a week?

have Kelly, _____ cleaned twice a week?

7. A bank clerk was cashing my cheque when the robbers entered the bank.

cashed I _____ when the robbers entered the bank.

8. I haven't been to the hairdresser's for a haircut lately.

cut I haven't _____ lately.

Vocabulary Practice**A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.**

make for: go towards a place

make out: manage (with difficulty) to see, hear or understand sth

make up: (1) invent a story or excuse
(2) become friends again after a quarrel or disagreement

mix up: confuse people or things

move in: begin to live in a house or place

move out: stop living in a house or place and go somewhere else

1. I always _____ the oil and the vinegar because they are in similar bottles.

2. Mark _____ of the flat after an argument with his flatmate.

3. We quickly _____ the barn when it started raining.

4. Don't believe anything he says. He's always _____ stories.

5. Could you speak up, please? I can't _____ what you're saying.

6. We've got the keys to our new house and tomorrow we're going to _____.

B Complete using prepositions.

1. I kept thinking _____ the accident all night long.
2. Pet owners care _____ their pets a great deal.
3. Could you take care _____ little Jimmy tonight?
4. You can rely _____ your good friends when you need them.
5. I have a need _____ coffee in the morning.
6. Teachers feel responsible _____ the progress of their students.
7. I'm very thankful _____ all your help.
8. Teachers must learn to be patient _____ their troublesome students.
9. You should take responsibility _____ your actions.
10. The amount of food you make depends _____ the number of guests you're expecting.
11. I'd like to thank you _____ the gift you gave me.
12. She was grateful to her friends _____ helping her out at such a bad time.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.**SSH, LET THEM SLEEP!**

The (1) _____ that a member of your family is sleepwalking may be (2) _____, but it is not an uncommon phenomenon. Both adults and children sleepwalk. However, it is more common in children.

Sleepwalking is not a psychological (3) _____, as some may think. Nor is there any (4) _____ between dreams and sleepwalking. The explanation which experts give for sleepwalking is that it is mainly due to being (5) _____ and under a lot of stress. (6) _____, because of work or school or even the loss of a favourite (7) _____, could trigger it off. A person who sleepwalks is usually under a lot of (8) _____.

Sleepwalkers move easily around the house, despite the (9) _____, sometimes opening drawers as if searching for something. It is difficult to wake up a sleepwalker and it is considered (10) _____ because it can cause great distress. The following morning the sleepwalker doesn't usually remember anything.

DISCOVER**ALARM****ORDER****CONNECT****TIRE****ANXIOUS****POSSESS****PRESS****DARK****WISE****D Complete using the words given.**

ancient (adj):	of the distant past
antique (adj):	made in the style of an earlier period
old-fashioned (adj):	no longer fashionable
traditional (adj):	in accordance with tradition
elderly (adj):	quite old, past middle age (for people)
old (adj):	no longer young or new
mature (adj):	(1) fully developed in personality and behaviour (2) when sth is left for a time to allow its full flavour to develop (usually for cheese, etc.)
ripe (adj):	fully grown and ready to be eaten or used (usually for fruit)

1. My grandfather is very active even though he is _____.
2. My father buys _____ furniture, restores it and then sells it at a profit.
3. This is _____ Irish food. Do you like it?
4. He finished his project about _____ civilisations.
5. My grandmother still makes jam in the good _____ way.
6. An _____ couple won the trip to Hawaii.
7. _____ bananas are great for making banana cake.
8. Jane is very _____ for a fifteen-year-old.

16 Conditionals

Type 1: Real situations in the present or future.

If clause	Main clause	Use
If + Present Tense (simple or progressive) or Present Perfect Simple (if the action has already finished)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Future tense <i>If Martin gets the job, he will move to Oxford.</i> can/may/might/must/should + infinitive <i>If you have finished your homework, you may go out with your friends.</i> Present Simple <i>If you mix blue and yellow, you get green.</i> Imperative <i>If you miss the train, take the bus.</i> 	real or probable situations in the present or future
		general truths (if= when, whenever) instructions or commands

note

- If-clauses either precede or follow the main clause. If they precede the main clause, we separate them with a comma.
If you eat a lot of sweets, you'll gain weight.
- BUT:** You'll gain weight if you eat a lot of sweets.
- If there is only a slight possibility of something happening, we can use **should**.
If you should ever go to Colombia, visit the Museum of Gold in Bogota.
In this case, **if** can be omitted; **should** comes before the subject (inversion).
Should you ever go to Colombia, visit the Museum of Gold in Bogota.

Type 2: Unreal situations in the present or future.

If clause	Main clause	Use
If + Past Tense (simple or progressive)	would [] could [] + present infinitive might [] <i>If he were still living with his parents, he would be able to save more money.</i> <i>If I had a lot of money, I would spend most of it travelling round the world.</i> <i>If I were you, I wouldn't argue with my employer.</i>	unreal or imaginary situations in the present events that are unlikely to happen in the future to give advice

note

- We use **were** instead of **was** in type 2 conditional sentences in formal English.
If he were not so lazy, he would be more successful.
- If** can be omitted when it is followed by **were**; **were** comes before the subject (inversion).
Wore she taller, she could become a model. (= if she were taller, ...)
- We can use **will/would** in the if-clause (Type 1+2 conditional sentences) to express desire, willingness, politeness, insistence, annoyance, uncertainty or to make a request.
If you will keep on being so noisy, I'll have to report you.
I would appreciate it if you would give me a lift to the airport.

Type 3: Unreal situations in the past.

If clause	Main clause	Use
If + Past Perfect (simple or progressive)	would — could — + perfect infinitive might —	
	<i>If he had known your phone number, he would have called you.</i>	for actions that did not happen
	<i>If I had been more careful, I would have passed the driving test.</i>	to express criticism or regret

note

If can sometimes be omitted; **had** comes before the subject (inversion).
Had you arrived earlier, you would have met my grandmother. (= If you had arrived earlier...)

Mixed conditionals

Mixed conditionals do not follow the tense rules strictly; we can make combinations according to the context:

If I had a car, I would have picked you up from the airport. (Types 2, 3)

If you had taken some aspirin, you would feel better now. (Types 3, 2)

note

Conditionals can be introduced with other expressions instead of if:

- **unless (= if not)**

e.g. Unless you hurry, you'll miss the bus.

- **as long as/provided/providing (= only if)**

e.g. You can borrow my camera as long as you promise to handle it with care.

You can visit me anytime provided/providing (that) you call me in advance.

- **in case**

e.g. I'll buy some mineral water in case I get thirsty (= I'll buy some mineral water before I get thirsty.)

But: I'll buy some mineral water if I get thirsty (= I'll buy some mineral water when I get thirsty.)

- **on condition (that) (= provided)**

e.g. On condition (that) he passes his exam, his parents will let him go to Italy for the holidays.

- **but for (= if it wasn't/hadn't been for)**

e.g. But for the rain, we would have enjoyed the picnic.

- **or else (= if not/otherwise)**

e.g. Hurry up, or else we'll miss the train.

- **Suppose/Supposing (= imagine if)**

e.g. Suppose/Supposing the lights went out, what would we do?

- **only if**

e.g. She will go to Jane's house only if she has finished her work.

- **even if**

e.g. He wouldn't talk about his plans even if you begged him to.

- **whether**

e.g. Whether he agrees with me or not is not important to me.

► We never use the Future "Will" after these structures, except for **or else** and **whether**.

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. If you _____ the Louvre while in Paris, buy me a poster.
a. visited b. should visit c. have visited
2. If I had installed an alarm, the thieves wouldn't _____ able to break into my house last week.
a. be b. had been c. have been
3. If I _____ the job, I will take you out to dinner on Saturday to celebrate.
a. have got b. get c. got
4. I would make a lot of money, if I _____ a famous artist, but I'm not.
a. were b. had been c. will be
5. Karen _____ for New York tomorrow providing the weather is fine.
a. will leave b. would leave c. had left
6. If I were in your shoes, I _____ to them.
a. will apologise b. had apologised c. would apologise
7. If you _____ the application to the company on time, they might have called you for an interview. I can't understand why you didn't!
a. send b. had sent c. will send

B Make sentences using conditionals.

1. The lift may not work so use the stairs.
-
-

2. I want a new car but I can't save up enough money.
-
-

3. This isn't a very good camera. The photos I took aren't very clear.
-
-

4. I think that you shouldn't drink so much coffee.
-

5. We didn't have your address so we didn't send you a letter.
-

6. The bus drivers might be on strike tomorrow, so I'll probably catch a taxi.
-



C Complete using mixed conditionals.

1. He _____ (not be) ill today if he _____ (not walk) home in the rain last night.
2. You've been playing with that cat for hours. If you _____ (be) allergic to cats, you _____ (know) by now.
3. If they _____ (catch) a taxi, they _____ (be) here any minute now.
4. We _____ (not be) stuck here now if you _____ (take) the car to the garage before we left for our holiday.
5. If I _____ (be) you, I _____ (not sell) my car before I bought another one. How will you get to work now?

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- If she doesn't follow a stricter diet, she won't lose any weight.
unless She won't lose any weight _____ a stricter diet.
- I wouldn't have succeeded if my parents hadn't encouraged and supported me.
but I wouldn't have succeeded _____ and support.
- He has twisted his ankle, so he can't play tennis this afternoon.
not Had _____, he would have been able to play tennis this afternoon.
- We didn't follow the directions, that's why we got lost.
would We _____ if we had followed the directions.
- You should read more to improve your vocabulary; that's what I'd do.
were If _____ read more to improve my vocabulary.
- Jenny can get a kitten only if she promises to take care of it.
long Jenny can get a kitten _____ to take care of it.
- I wouldn't mind being transferred to another city if they offered me a higher salary.
condition I wouldn't mind being transferred to another city _____ me a higher salary.
- Fortunately, they were wearing seat belts, so nobody was seriously injured.
not If _____ seat belts, they could have been seriously injured.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

pay back: give back money you have borrowed

pay off: give sb back all the money you owe them

point out: draw sb's attention to sth

pull down: demolish

pull over: move closer to the side of the road and stop (for vehicles)

1. John _____ his old school friend in the photograph.

2. The policeman asked him to _____ for a breathalyser test.

3. I'll give you the money, but when will you _____ me _____?

4. That building will be _____ next week.

5. It will take me two years to _____ my loan.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

LION KING

The lion is known as the king of the jungle. Perhaps this is because of its (1) _____, size and (2) _____ to run up to 35 kph. Yet, for 20 hours a day, the lion lies under the sun doing absolutely nothing. But, when it gets (3) _____, its manner changes and it becomes (4) _____. Satisfying its enormous appetite is its only (5) _____. The lion will eat anything, from rats to animals as large as giraffes in its natural (6) _____. But zebra meat provides the lion with the greatest (7) _____. Lions live in groups called prides. The lioness is (8) _____ amazing. She is quicker than the male. She is so (9) _____ that she will hunt and look after her young for two years before they become (10) _____.

STRONG

ABLE

HUNGER

THREAT

INTEND

SURROUND

SATISFY

TRUE

CARE

DEPEND

C Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

in practice/theory: actually happening/theoretically

in private/public: without/with the presence of others

in reality: actually, in fact
in secret: secretly

in the shade/sun: protected from/exposed to sunlight
in tears: crying

in time (for): early or at the appointed time

in touch (with): in contact with sb
in uniform: wearing the same special clothes as everyone else at work or school

in a loud/low voice: loudly/quietly
in the way: when sb or sth stops you from moving forward or seeing clearly

in other words: saying sth differently

- The mayor hasn't been seen _____ for some time.
- Do you keep _____ with your old school friends?
- Martha looked very upset. I saw her running out of the office _____.
- Your idea works _____, but not in practice.
- You've arrived just _____ for lunch.
- Could you help me move this table? It's _____.
- Nobody knew about our plan. We used to meet once a week _____ and talk about it.
- The children should all be _____ for the parade.
- The mirrors made the room look bigger, but _____ it was quite small.
- You shouldn't stay _____ for too long, you'll get burnt.
- Your car isn't reliable enough for a long trip, _____ you'd better not take it.
- I can't hear you very well. Could you repeat that _____?

D Complete using the words given.

vacant (adj): not being used or occupied (e.g. hotel room, job position)

free (adj): not being used or occupied by sb or not reserved for sb to use (e.g. table, seat)

empty (adj): with no people or things in it
deserted (adj): becoming empty because everybody has left

left (adj): what remains after the rest has gone or been used

abandoned (adj): no longer used or occupied (e.g. building)

alone (adj): not with any other person

lonely (adj): unhappy because you are alone

single (adj): not married

alive (adj): living, not dead (not followed by a noun)

live (adj): (event, performance or programme) being broadcast exactly at the time it happens, not recorded in advance

lively (adj): full of energy or enthusiasm
living (adj): alive, not dead (followed by a noun)

- This box is _____. Can I put the rubbish in it?
- We must buy some more cheese, there's only a small piece _____.
- I'm sorry. We have no more _____ rooms. The hotel is full.
- The bandits hid in the _____ warehouse.
- The only _____ table we have is the one in the corner.
- It was 1:00 a.m. and the usually busy street was now quiet and _____.
- All my friends are married except Kate, who is still _____.
- I get really _____ in the winter because all my family live abroad.
- Mr Jones came to the event _____ as his wife was away on business.
- The football match was broadcast _____ in thirty countries.
- Jim is a _____ and outgoing person. Everybody likes him.
- The wounded bird was barely _____.
- The old man said that life during the war was a _____ nightmare.

Revision 04

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. If you _____ a flight, would you have gone by train?
 a. haven't booked b. don't book c. hadn't booked d. won't book
2. Here are your photos. We _____ at the photographer's.
 a. got them developed b. develop them c. got developed them d. got them develop
3. Betty _____ a lot of presents after her graduation.
 a. was been given b. gave c. was giving d. was given
4. The cat must _____ to the vet.
 a. taken b. be taken c. be take d. take
5. _____ Diana, congratulate her for me, will you?
 a. Should you saw b. If should you see c. Should you see d. If you saw
6. My son told me he tied his shoes by _____.
 a. him b. himself c. his d. his own
7. We have had the roof of our house _____.
 a. to replace b. replace c. been replaced d. replaced
8. Sue _____ by the police all night.
 a. was being questioned b. was questioning c. is being questioned d. had questioned
9. Kev _____ into the tree if the brakes on his bike had been working.
 a. wouldn't crash b. won't crash c. won't have crashed d. wouldn't have crashed
10. Jack _____ last night.
 a. had stolen his wallet b. his wallet stolen c. had his wallet stolen d. has stolen his wallet
11. I'll lend you my car _____ you promise to drive carefully.
 a. as long as b. unless c. even if d. whether
12. If I _____ a house like that, I'd look after it better.
 a. had owned b. have owned c. owned d. own
13. He got his brother _____ the washing-up.
 a. to do b. do c. doing d. to have done
14. Don't go out by _____ at night. It's dangerous.
 a. myself b. yourself c. me d. her
15. I'll find you _____ you go.
 a. whatever b. whichever c. whenever d. wherever

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. She has arranged to work this afternoon, so she can't come shopping with us.
not Had _____ this afternoon, she would have been able to come shopping with us.
2. Someone has stolen my bike, Dad.
had I _____, Dad.
3. People expect that the weather will change soon.
to The weather _____ soon.
4. I wouldn't mind contacting her but I don't have her phone number.
would I _____ if I had her phone number.
5. When did they replace the broken windows, Annie?
replaced When _____, Annie?
6. You are all welcome to have some more cake.
help Feel free to _____ some more cake.
7. Carol, I shall be glad to show you round if you decide to visit London.
should Carol, _____ to visit London, I shall be glad to show you round.
8. We've asked an electrician to install lights in the garden.
have We will _____ lights in the garden.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. I'm really _____ summer holidays this year.
 a. looking after b. looking out for c. looking into d. looking forward to
2. It's raining! Quick, let's make _____ that shop.
 a. out b. up c. in d. for
3. During the month of August, Athens is almost _____.
 a. vacant b. abandoned c. left d. deserted
4. After the break, we'll _____ with chapter three of the book.
 a. insist b. persist c. keep d. continue
5. This is a valuable _____ chair which dates back to the eighteenth century.
 a. antique b. old-fashioned c. ancient d. traditional
6. My job is so _____ that I don't think I'll be able to take a summer break.
 a. demanding b. persisting c. hard d. tough
7. Is he _____ enough to take on so much responsibility?
 a. elderly b. ancient c. ripe d. mature
8. Billy the Kid was wanted dead or _____.
 a. live b. alive c. lively d. living
9. I went to Spain on holiday _____, but I made a lot of friends there.
 a. single b. alone c. lonely d. free
10. You'd better _____ up all the unknown words in the dictionary.
 a. point b. make c. mix d. look
11. The room was in a _____.
 a. hurry b. mess c. mood d. shade

12. His handwriting is so difficult to read. I can hardly _____ what he's written.
 a. make out b. make up c. look into d. point out
13. If you have a problem, don't hesitate to _____ your hand.
 a. raise b. rise c. arise d. rised
14. Mike was _____ after he broke his leg.
 a. in reality b. in order c. in pain d. in person
15. Please don't forget to _____ the money you have borrowed from me.
 a. pull over b. pay back c. point out d. pull down

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1. John couldn't give a logical _____ as to why he had arrived so late. | EXPLAIN |
| 2. The eyewitness gave an accurate _____ of the bank robber. | DESCRIBE |
| 3. For _____ information on flight times and package holidays, contact your travel agent. | ADD |
| 4. We lost most of our _____ in the flood. | POSSESS |
| 5. I was _____ to carry my luggage, so I had to use a trolley. | ABLE |
| 6. The attic is in _____. Let's tidy it up. | ORDER |
| 7. Alice had a _____ day at work and went to bed early. | TIRE |
| 8. He got the _____ that the situation was out of control. | IMPRESS |

C Choose the correct answers.

My friend Alex wanted to (1) _____ his house painted, as he didn't want to do it (2) _____. So, he decided to call the number of a painting company he had seen on an advertisement that (3) _____ left on his car. A young man answered the phone, and Alex told him about his house. An appointment (4) _____ for the following Thursday. When the day came, a knock (5) _____ on Alex's door. When Alex opened it, he saw two twelve-year-old boys standing in front of (6) _____. They explained that they had wanted to earn some extra money for (7) _____, so they had created and handed out the ad. If Alex (8) _____ the painters were twelve, he never would have called to begin with! He told them he was sorry, but he preferred to have his house painted by professionals.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1. a. have
b. having had
c. having
d. have had | 4. a. was being made
b. will be made
c. was made
d. was making | 7. a. itself
b. them
c. him
d. themselves |
| 2. a. his
b. he
c. himself
d. him | 5. a. had been heard
b. having heard
c. was hearing
d. was heard | 8. a. would have known
b. had known
c. knows
d. was to know |
| 3. a. was being
b. had been
c. having been
d. were | 6. a. him
b. he
c. it
d. them | |

17 | Unreal Past- Would rather- Had better

A. Unreal Past

Past tenses referring to unreal situations are called Unreal Past. The **Past Simple** can refer to untrue or imaginary situations in the **present** or **future**, while the **Past Perfect Simple** can refer to unreal situations in the **past**.

Unreal past with present or future time reference

Structure	Use	Examples
If + Past Tense	Type 2 Conditional	<i>If I had a car, I would drive to work.</i>
Imagine Suppose <input type="text"/> + Past Tense Supposing <input type="text"/>	imaginary situations in the present or future	<i>Suppose you lived in a small village, would you miss the city?</i>
wish <input type="text"/> If only <input type="text"/> + Past Tense	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> wish about a present situation that we would like to be different ► If only is stronger than wish. 	<i>I wish I lived in the country. (I don't.)</i> <i>If only I were on holiday.</i>
wish <input type="text"/> + would + infinitive If only <input type="text"/> + infinitive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to express annoyance, irritation, dissatisfaction to make a wish concerning a present situation which is unlikely to change ► The subject of would must be different from the subject of wish. 	<i>I wish he wouldn't eat in the office.</i> <i>I wish time wouldn't pass so quickly!</i>
wish <input type="text"/> + could + infinitive If only <input type="text"/> + infinitive	to make a wish or express our regret about sth we cannot do at present	<i>She wishes she could speak French. (She can't)</i>
as if as though <input type="text"/> + Past Tense	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> untrue situations in the present ► Were is used instead of was. 	<i>He speaks as if he were a foreigner. (He is not.)</i>
It's time <input type="text"/> It's about time <input type="text"/> + Past Tense It's high time <input type="text"/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to indicate that the time has come for someone to do something to express criticism or a complaint about sth that should have already been done ► It's about time/it's high time are stronger than It's time. ► It's time + infinitive: it is the right time (for sb) to do something 	<i>It's time we went home.</i> <i>It's time they started working.</i> <i>It's about time we got rid of this old car!</i> <i>It's time to tidy up.</i> <i>It's time for them to start working.</i>

Unreal past with past time reference

If + Past perfect	Type 3 Conditional	<i>If she had worked harder, she would have been promoted.</i>
wish <input type="text"/> + Past Perfect If only <input type="text"/> + Past Perfect	to express sorrow or regret about sth that did or did not happen in the past	<i>I wish I had remembered to buy her a present. (I didn't.)</i>
as if as though <input type="text"/> + Past Perfect	unreal situations in the past	<i>He talked to everyone as if he had known them for years.</i>
Imagine Suppose <input type="text"/> + Past Perfect Supposing <input type="text"/>	imaginary situations in the past	<i>Suppose he hadn't fled his country, would he be in prison now?</i>

note

- **wish** can also go with an infinitive (meaning **want**) or a noun:

She wishes to speak to the headmaster.

We wish you happiness.

- **wish** is used for unreal or improbable situations; **hope** is used for possible situations.

I wish you were here.

I hope to see you when I come to London.

B. Would rather (=I would prefer)

If the subject of **would rather** is the same as the subject of the main verb:

	Time Reference	Structure	Examples
Affirmative	Present/Future	would rather + present bare infinitive	<i>She'd rather stay at home tonight.</i>
	Past	would rather + perfect bare infinitive	<i>I'd rather have travelled to Egypt last winter.</i>
Negative	Present/Future	would rather + not + present bare infinitive	<i>I'd rather not eat any more today.</i>
	Past	would rather + not + perfect bare infinitive	<i>Steve would rather not have gone to Brian's house yesterday.</i>

If the subject of **would rather** is different from the subject of the main verb:

Present/Future	would rather + subject + Past Simple (affirmative or negative form)	<i>I'd rather you left your umbrella outside. I'd rather you didn't eat in the office.</i>
Past	would rather + subject + Past Perfect (affirmative or negative form)	<i>I'd rather you had informed me earlier. I'd rather he hadn't borrowed my bicycle.</i>

Synonymous expressions

Structure**Examples**

- prefer + -ing/noun + to + -ing/noun

He prefers swimming to scuba diving.

- prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive
(general preference)

She prefers to travel by plane rather than (travel) by boat.

- would prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive
(preference in a particular situation)

I would prefer to go out rather than stay at home.

note

- **would rather + bare infinitive + than + bare infinitive**

I'd rather walk than go by bus.

- **would sooner** is used in the same way as **would rather**.

I'd sooner we left earlier. (present/future time reference)

He'd sooner she hadn't spent so much money on clothes. (past time reference)

C. Had better (=should)

Had better expresses strong advice, a warning or a threat and is stronger than **should** and **ought to**.

Its subject is always the same as the subject of the main verb.

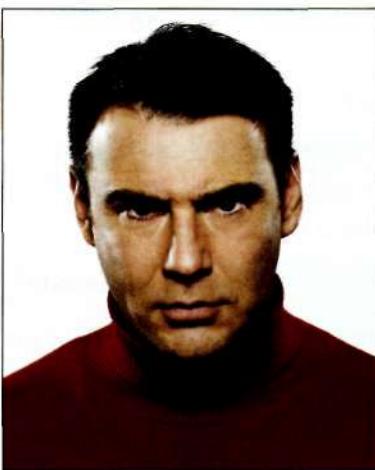
Time Reference	Structure	Examples
Present / Future	had better + (not) + present bare infinitive	<i>He'd better see a doctor as soon as possible. You'd better not drive so fast.</i>
Past	It would have been better if + Past Perfect	<i>It would have been better if you hadn't argued with him last week.</i>

Grammar Practice

C

A Write sentences using **wish** or **If only**.

1. My brother always takes my car without asking me. He's so inconsiderate.



2. Our luggage was stolen from our hotel room. We should have insured it.

3. I found a kitten. I want to keep it but my parents won't let me.

4. I woke up late and missed my flight to Rome.

5. Everyone in my family can paint or draw, but I'm not artistic at all.

B Choose the correct answers.

1. You had better _____ in here. The fire alarm might go off.
a. not smoke b. to not smoke c. not smoked
2. Imagine you _____ the opportunity to become a football player. What would you have done?
a. not had b. don't have c. hadn't had
3. I would rather you _____ her about the situation. Now she's very worried.
a. not have told b. didn't tell c. hadn't told
4. It's time _____. Don't you think?
a. to have left b. to leave c. we had left
5. I get along with my brother but I wish he _____ his clothes lying around the house.
a. couldn't leave b. hadn't left c. wouldn't leave
6. After our argument she acted as if nothing _____.
a. had happened b. would happen c. has happened
7. He would rather _____ pizza. He didn't like the spaghetti.
a. ordered b. have ordered c. had ordered
8. I'd prefer _____ tea rather than coffee, if you don't mind.
a. have b. to have c. having
9. I've got a terrible headache. If only I _____ to bed late last night.
a. hadn't gone b. didn't go c. wouldn't go
10. I really liked our day trip to the countryside. I wish we _____ again next week.
a. going b. went c. could go

I've
me
sci
test
sci
The
ani

1.

2.

D

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

I

C Choose the correct answers.

ANIMAL RIGHTS

I've always loved animals and as long as I can remember I never really liked (1) _____ meat. What makes me furious, though, is animal testing. In fact, I think it's high time they (2) _____ animal testing. I hear scientists talking about animal testing as though it (3) _____ harmless to animals, but we all know the harm tests cause. Why should animals have to live in captivity, suffer great pain, be injured or even killed in the name of science? If only people (4) _____ the consequences of the tests, they might start protesting against them. The government had better (5) _____ action soon. The way I see it, it's time they (6) _____ animal testing. The number of animals suffering is increasing every year.

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. eating | 3. a. were | 5. a. be taking |
| b. eat | b. be | b. take |
| c. having eaten | c. had been | c. taken |
| 2. a. are banning | 4. a. consider | 6. a. prohibited |
| b. banned | b. considered | b. will prohibit |
| c. had banned | c. have considered | c. have prohibited |

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Jeremy regrets not having accepted the job he was offered.
wishes Jeremy _____ the job he was offered.
2. If you had heard the politician speak, you'd think he had won the elections.
though The politician spoke _____ the elections.
3. I think you should get a haircut!
about It's _____ a haircut!
4. I can't stand Betty borrowing my clothes without asking me first.
rather I _____ borrow my clothes without asking me first.
5. It's a pity governments spend so much money on nuclear weapons.
would I _____ so much money on nuclear weapons.
6. I advise you to see the dentist today, otherwise your toothache will get worse.
better You _____ the dentist today, otherwise your toothache will get worse.
7. It would have been better to have hired a car during the holidays.
only If _____ a car during the holidays.
8. I would like to know how to cook.
knew I _____ to cook.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the phrasal verbs given.

put aside:	keep sth to be dealt with or used at a later time
put away:	store sth tidily where it is usually kept
put off:	postpone
put on:	(1) wear (clothes) (2) gain weight
put out:	extinguish (fire)
put up:	offer hospitality
put up with:	tolerate or accept sth unpleasant

- I always _____ weight during the winter.
- One thing I can't _____ is rudeness.
- You shouldn't _____ the meeting with Mr Brown.
- Luckily, the fire brigade came quickly and _____ the fire.
- Every summer I _____ my friends who come from Australia.
- You can play with the toys as long as you _____ them _____ after you've finished playing with them.
- I always _____ money _____ for the holidays.

B Complete using prepositions.

- Do you believe _____ the power of reflexology?
- You'll find the information _____ prehistoric animals in the encyclopaedia.
- I insist _____ paying for dinner.
- The employees were unaware _____ the financial problems the company was having.
- I always listen _____ the news in the morning.
- Are you certain _____ the time our flight leaves?
- Kim is familiar _____ most of the computer programmes on the market.
- We haven't heard _____ Jane for weeks.
- Mr Kent had no knowledge _____ your whereabouts.
- Did you inform them _____ the new plan?
- Were you serious _____ buying a yacht?
- I knew nothing _____ Tony's accident.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

JUST TO BE ON THE SAFE SIDE...

People are becoming more security conscious these days. Crimes like (1) _____ and burglary are definitely on the increase. One of the most (2) _____ experiences a home (3) _____ can have is to come back from work or a trip and find that his or her (4) _____ have disappeared from their home because a window or door had (5) _____ been left open. What can we do to protect ourselves?

The most important piece of (6) _____ is to make sure that your home (7) _____ coverage is up to date and covers burglary. Another (8) _____ thing to do is to go along to your local police station, where they will be able to make (9) _____ on how to safeguard your property. At least you'll know their advice is (10) _____.

THIEF

PAIN

OWN

VALUE

ACCIDENT

ADVISE

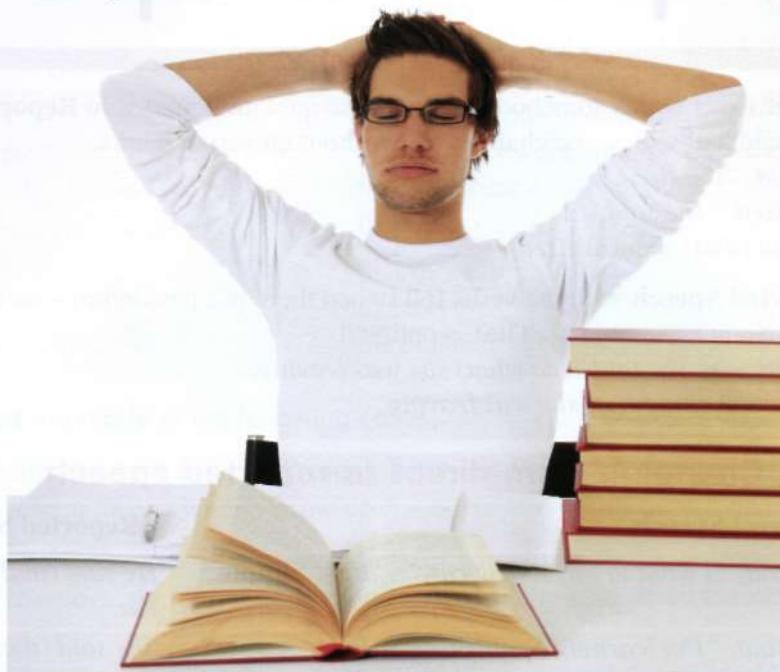
INSURE

SENSE

SUGGEST

RELY

D Complete using the words given.



wild (adj): very excited and out of control

mad (adj):
(1) very angry
(2) crazy or foolish

furious (adj): extremely angry

bad-tempered (adj): not cheerful, getting angry easily

irritable (adj): getting annoyed easily

nervous (adj): obviously anxious or worried about sth that is happening or might happen

sensitive (adj):
(1) easily affected or harmed by sth (2) aware of and understanding other people's needs and problems

sensible (adj): based on reason, not on emotions

timid (adj): shy, nervous, lacking in courage and self-confidence

shy (adj): nervous and uncomfortable in the company of other people

embarrassed (adj): feeling uncomfortable in a situation or guilty about sth

ashamed (adj): feeling guilty or embarrassed because of sth you have done

- Mike was obviously _____ before the exam.
- In the heat, babies get _____ and restless.
- My parents were _____ with me when they found out that I had used the car without their permission.
- The spectators went _____ as soon as their favourite football team appeared in the field.
- Some people are _____ by nature.
- I'll tell you the truth. Just don't get _____.
- Michelle is a very good social worker. She's very _____ to other people's problems.
- The _____ thing to do would be to get a lawyer's advice.
- You should be _____ of yourself for acting like a child.
- The _____ girl found it difficult to make friends at the new school.
- You can imagine how _____ I felt when I realised I was wearing two different shoes.
- I'm too _____ to speak in public.

18 Reported Speech

In Direct Speech we give the exact words somebody said and use quotation marks. In **Reported Speech** we give the meaning of what someone said, but with some changes and without quotation marks.

Direct Speech: *She said, "I'm tired."*

"I'm tired," she said.

Reported Speech: *She said (that) she was tired.*

We usually introduce **Reported Speech** with the verbs **tell** (when there is a person/pronoun as an object) and **say** (when there is no person/pronoun as an object). **That** is optional.

"I'm leaving, Tina," she said. → *She told Tina (that) she was leaving.*

"I'm leaving," she said. → *She said (that) she was leaving.*

Changing from direct to reported speech

	Direct Speech		Reported Speech	
Tenses	Present Simple	<i>He said, "I want to buy a new car."</i>	Past Simple	<i>He said (that) he wanted to buy a new car.</i>
	Present Progressive	<i>She said, "I'm learning Spanish."</i>	Past Progressive	<i>She said (that) she was learning Spanish.</i>
	Past Simple	<i>"I missed the train," he said.</i>	Past Perfect Simple	<i>He said (that) he had missed the train.</i>
	Present Perfect Simple	<i>"I've missed the train," he said.</i>	Past Perfect Progressive	<i>She said (that) she had been staying with a friend.</i>
	Past Progressive	<i>She said, "I was staying with a friend."</i>		
	Present Perfect Progressive	<i>She said, "I have been staying with a friend."</i>		
Modal verbs	will	<i>She said, "I'll call you."</i>	would	<i>She said (that) she would call me.</i>
	can	<i>He said, "I can run very fast."</i>	could	<i>He said (that) he could run very fast.</i>
	may	<i>They said, "We may go on holiday."</i>	might	<i>They said (that) they might go on holiday.</i>
	must	<i>She said, "I must get up early every day."</i>	had to (obligation)	<i>She said (that) she had to get up early every day.</i>
		<i>He said, "You must be tired."</i>	must (deduction)	<i>He said (that) I must be tired.</i>
	must not	<i>She said, "You mustn't shout."</i>	must not (prohibition)	<i>She said (that) I/we mustn't shout.</i>
	need	<i>She said, "I need to go shopping."</i>	needed/had to	<i>She said (that) she needed/had to go shopping.</i>
	needn't	<i>He said, "I needn't hurry."</i>	needn't/didn't have to (present) wouldn't have to (future)	<i>He said (that) he didn't have to hurry.</i>
		<i>She said, "You needn't pick me up tomorrow."</i>		<i>She told me (that) I wouldn't have to pick her up the following day.</i>

► **would, could, might, should, ought to** do not change in Reported Speech.

	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
Time Expressions	now today/tonight yesterday tomorrow last week (month, etc.) next week (month, etc.) ago	then that day/that night the day before/the previous day the next/following day the previous week (month, etc.)/the week (month, etc.) before the following week (month, etc.) before
Other changes	this/these here pronouns /possessive adjectives	that/those there they change according to the context

note

No changes are made in the following cases:

- When the reporting verb is in the Present, Future or Present Perfect tense.
He says, "I'll be a lawyer when I grow up." → *He says (that) he will be a lawyer when he grows up.*
- when the sentence expresses a general truth or something that is unlikely to change.
She said, "The days are longer in the summer." → *She said (that) the days are longer in the summer.*
She said, "I prefer coffee to tea." → *She said (that) she prefers coffee to tea.*
- The Past Perfect (Simple and Progressive) does not change in Reported Speech.
She said, "I had prepared dinner in advance." → *She said (that) she had prepared dinner in advance.*
- The Past Progressive does not usually change; Past tenses **in time clauses** do not change.
"I was speaking on the phone when the doorbell rang," she said. → *She said (that) she was speaking on the phone when the doorbell rang.*
- When something is reported immediately after it is said.
"This shirt looks awful," Mary said. → *Mary said (that) this shirt looks awful.*
- The Past Simple in colloquial speech can either change or remain the same.
"I got my school report yesterday," said Jim. → *Jim said (that) he got/had got his school report the day before.*
- When something, although said earlier, will take place in the future.
John said, "I'm flying to Rome tomorrow." → *John said (that) he is flying to Rome tomorrow. (It is still today.)*
- When there is a Conditional (Type 2 or 3) or a sentence with wish>If only.
Peter said, "If I were rich, I would travel a lot." → *Peter said (that) if he were rich, he would travel a lot.*
Karen said, "If I hadn't woken up late, I wouldn't have missed the bus." → *Karen said (that) if she hadn't woken up late, she wouldn't have missed the bus.*
Susan said, "I wish I knew her name." → *Susan said (that) she wished she knew her name.*

Reported Questions

Reported Questions are introduced with the verbs **ask**, **inquire**, **wonder**, **want to know**, etc. The auxiliaries **do**, **does**, **did** and question marks are not used. The word order is the same as in statements and the tenses change according to the rules.

Type	Form	Examples
Yes/No questions	ask [] + if/whether + subject + verb wonder, etc. []	<i>"Do you speak German?"</i> → <i>She wondered if I spoke German.</i>
Wh-questions	ask [] + question word + subject + verb wonder, etc. []	<i>"Where do you live?"</i> → <i>She wanted to know where I lived.</i>

note

- ▶ **Whether** often indicates uncertainty or doubt. It is used when there is a choice between two alternatives.
He wondered whether I had posted the letter or not.
 - ▶ **Question Tags** are omitted in Reported Speech.
"They haven't arrived yet, have they?" he said. → He asked if/whether they had arrived yet.

Commands — Requests — Advice

To report commands, requests, advice, warnings or suggestions, we use the verbs **tell**, **ask**, **beg**, **order**, **command**, **advise**, **forbid**, **warn**, **encourage**, etc. + (object) + full infinitive

The flight attendant said, "Please return to your seats and fasten your seat belts." → The flight attendant asked us to return to our seats and fasten our seat belts.

"Don't talk so fast," he said. → He advised me not to talk so fast.

Other Reporting Verbs

- **refuse/offer/promise (+ object)/threaten (+ object)/claim/agree, etc. + full infinitive**
"I'll pick you up from the airport," he said. → *He offered to pick me up from the airport.*
 - **accuse sb of/complain to sb about/insist on/admit (to)/deny/apologise for + -ing form**
Susan said, "He stole the old woman's handbag." → *Susan accused him of stealing the old woman's handbag.*
"I didn't write anything on the desk," he said. → *He denied writing/having written anything on the desk.*
 - **complain/explain/agree/claim/deny □ + that-clause**
promise/threaten/warn + (object) □
"My coffee is too cold," she said. → *She complained that her coffee was too cold.*

note

"Let's go for a swim," Peter said. → Peter suggested [going for a swim.
that they should go for a swim.
that they go/went for a swim.]

Grammar Practice

A A dentist advises his patient on his problem. Rewrite the dialogue in Reported Speech.

Mr Kent: My gums are very sore. Yesterday, as I was brushing my teeth, I noticed that my gums were bleeding! Is there anything wrong with them? How can I stop the bleeding? What should I do?

Dentist: Firstly, don't panic. If you take my advice, you won't have any problems. Buy a soft toothbrush and brush your teeth twice a day to keep your gums healthy. I'll make an appointment for you next week, so that I can remove the plaque that has built up and is causing you problems.

B Change the following sentences into Reported Speech. Use one of the reporting verbs given below.

**advise
promise**

**suggest
inquire**

**warn
agree**

**threaten
apologise**

**complain
refuse**

1. "Why don't we invite Jane to dinner tonight?" Mrs Stone said.

2. "Where is Mount Everest?" asked a student.

3. "If you scream, I'll shoot," said the robber to the girl.

4. "I have been standing in this queue for two hours!" said the man.

5. "You should stay in the shade and wear a hat, Mr Bent," said the doctor.

6. "You'll burn yourself, Tom, if you keep playing with matches," said his father.

7. "I'm really sorry that I woke you up this morning, Harry," said Charlie.

8. "I think you're right, Tracey. We ought to let the others know," said Kerry.

9. "I'll definitely pay you back by the end of the week, Mum," said Sue.

10. "I will not let you borrow my car tomorrow, Graham," said Michael.

C Rewrite using Direct Speech.

Sandra told Marie that she had been trying to call the university for the last hour but the line had been engaged.

Sandra: _____

Marie inquired what Sandra wanted to ask them.

Marie: _____

Sandra answered that they had sent out her results the week before but that she hadn't received them yet.

Sandra: _____

Marie asked Sandra whether she knew that the post office had been on strike for the past week.

Marie: _____

She replied that she hadn't known. She explained that if only she had known, then she wouldn't have wasted so much time on the phone.

Sandra: _____

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. "I must have this document translated into French," said Robert.
had Robert said that _____ document translated into French.
2. "You really must let me pay for the meal," said Jane.
insisted Jane _____ for the meal.
3. "Leave me alone," Tony said to us.
told Tony _____ alone.
4. "I rang you last night, Jack," said Brian.
rung Brian explained to Jack that he _____ night.
5. "You needn't move to England next year," they told me.
would I was told that I _____ to England the following year.
6. "How much does it cost to go to Rome by plane?" he asked himself.
wondered He _____ to go to Rome by plane.
7. "Are you working today, Peter?" he asked.
whether He wanted to know _____ day.
8. "Don't bring your cat into the shop," the shop owner said to Mary.
forbade The shop owner _____ cat into the shop.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

throw away:	get rid of sth you don't want
throw out:	(1) force sb out of a place or group (2) get rid of sth you don't want
tidy up:	make a place neat
try on:	put on clothes to see if they fit you or if they look nice
try out:	test sth in order to see how effective or useful it is

1. _____ this room! It's a complete mess!
2. Could we _____ the bike before we buy it?
3. He ate the last biscuit and _____ the packet.
4. Would you like to _____ this pair of jeans? The dressing room is over there.
5. He was _____ of the classroom for starting a fight.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

on time:	not late, at the expected or scheduled time
on the way:	in the course of a journey
out of breath:	breathing very quickly and with difficulty because you've been doing sth energetic
out of control:	uncontrolled, unrestrained
out of danger:	safe, no longer likely to be harmed
out of fashion:	old-fashioned, no longer popular
out of luck:	unlucky
out of order:	broken, not working, not functioning properly
out of reach:	impossible to have, get or accomplish
out of sight:	sth that you cannot see
out of work:	unemployed

1. Medicine should be kept _____ of children.
2. It seems we're _____. The last tickets were sold to the couple in front of us.
3. The fire was _____ because of the high winds.
4. Don't worry, she usually arrives at meetings _____.
5. It's depressing being _____. There's nothing to do and no money to spend.
6. We'll stop _____ to their house and buy some flowers.
7. Why are you _____? Have you been running?
8. I watched the train leave until it was _____.
9. I couldn't call you because my telephone was _____.
10. Nowadays people can wear whatever they like. Hardly anything is _____.
11. Fortunately, it was announced that all the injured people from the accident were _____.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

CLIMBING UP THE STARS!

The highest mountain in the world is Mount Everest, 8,848m high. Many (1) _____ climbers have risked their lives climbing it. More than 140 people have died, some in their attempt to reach the peak, and others who were (2) _____ in their return trip from the top.

Being (3) _____ is not enough for this trip. You should be fit, skilled and you must take the proper (4) _____ with you. This could mean the difference between life and death. Nevertheless, such an (5) _____ is full of danger.

Rarely does a climber return from Mount Everest without needing (6) _____ attention. Some come down with fingers or toes so (7) _____ that they clink like glass.

But what is it that makes people risk their lives or take the (8) _____ Mt Everest imposes on them? Why is it that even the death of fellow climbers doesn't (9) _____ them?

(10) _____ climbers' reasons may be difficult. Perhaps it's the thrill of standing on the peak of the highest mountain, the place on earth that's the closest to the stars.

ADVENTURE

FORTUNE

CONFIDE

SUPPLY

OPERATE

MEDICINE

FREEZE

PUNISH

COURAGE

UNDERSTAND

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

bake (v):	cook in an oven (e.g. cake)
boil (v):	cook in boiling water
grill (v):	cook using strong heat directly above or below the food
roast (v):	cook food by dry heat in an oven or over a fire
fry (v):	cook food in a pan with very hot oil or fat

spread (v):	apply on a surface as a coating
spill (v):	accidentally cause sth (usually liquid) to flow on a surface
drop (v):	cause sth to fall on the ground
flood (v):	make or become covered with water

debate (n):	(formal) discussion about a subject on which people have different and often opposing opinions
discussion (n):	when people talk about an issue in order to reach a decision
dialogue (n):	(1) communication or discussion between people or groups of people (2) conversation between two people in a book, etc.
interview (n):	(1) formal meeting at which sb is asked questions in order to find out if they are suitable for a job or course of study (2) conversation between a journalist and a famous person

1. Add the pasta when the water has _____.
2. I always _____ my eggs with lots of oil.
3. _____ the cake for 50 minutes.
4. Let's _____ the chops on the barbecue.
5. _____ the chicken with potatoes in the oven.

6. Tom _____ the vase and it broke.
7. I always _____ butter on my bread.
8. The children forgot to turn the tap off and the whole kitchen _____.
9. Oh, no! You've _____ the milk on the table.

10. My _____ with the personnel manager went well.
I might get the job after all.
11. The _____ in the book were very unnatural.
12. The presidential candidates are going to have a live _____ on television.
13. The members of the school council are going to have a _____ tomorrow about how to solve the problem.

19 Question Forms

A. Yes/No Questions

These questions may be answered simply with a **Yes** or **No**.

Formation

auxiliary verb []
 modal verb [] + subject + main verb
 be/have []

Examples

He lives in Manchester. → Does he live in Manchester?
I can swim well. → Can you swim well?
He is an accountant. → Is he an accountant?

note

- ▶ **Yes/No** questions can receive short answers, that is Yes/No + subject + auxiliary (positive or negative). *Is he looking for a new job?* Yes, he is.
- ▶ Other ways of answering **Yes / No** questions in short:

I expect so / I don't expect so / I expect not
 I suppose so / I don't suppose so / I suppose not
 I imagine so / I don't imagine so / I imagine not

I think so / I don't think so
 I hope so / I hope not
 I guess so / I guess not
 I'm afraid so / I'm afraid not

absolutely (not), certainly (not), definitely (not), of course (not)

Can the children play in the garden? Certainly. / I guess so. / I'm afraid they can't. / I'm afraid not.

B. Wh-Questions

Questions beginning with the words: **who**, **which**, **whose**, **what**, **why**, **when**, **where** and **how** ask for specific information.

Formation

question word [] + auxiliary verb/
 word [] + modal verb [] + subject + verb
 question word + be/have + subject

Examples

What are you looking for?
When must you leave?
Where are they?

note

- Prepositions are usually placed at the end of a question. e.g. *What did he talk about?*
- In formal English, prepositions can appear before the question word. e.g. *About what did he talk?*

Question Word

We ask about:

Examples

Who

people (subject or object)

Who is your best friend?

Who are you talking to?

Whom

people (object), in formal English or after prepositions

Who(m) did you meet yesterday?
To whom has she been talking?

Which

people or things (limited choice)

Which students will participate in the survey?
Which of these sweaters do you like best?

Whose

possession

Whose are these boots? Whose boots are these?

What

things (unlimited choice),
 actions and activities

What did you buy?

What happened?

What...like?

general descriptions

What is your brother like?

What type/sort kind of...?

specific information

What sort of cars do you like driving?

What time/size, etc...?

What height are we flying at?

What...for?

What do you need this for?

Why

reason, purpose

Why did he sell his car?

When

time

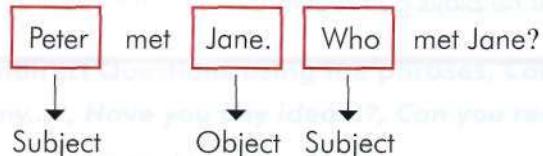
When are they coming?

Where	place	<i>Where is your office?</i>
How	manner / the way something is done	<i>How did they behave?</i> <i>How did you fix this?</i>
How + adjective/adverb	specific information	<i>How deep is this river?</i> <i>How long does it take to fly to London?</i>
How much/many	quantity	<i>How much coffee is left?</i>
How + be	someone's health	<i>How is your brother?</i>

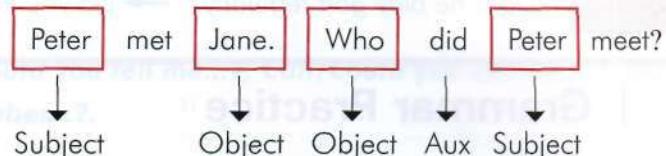
note

Who, **what** and **which** may ask about the subject or the object of a sentence.

- Questions about the subject do not take an auxiliary verb.



- Questions about the object take an auxiliary verb.

**C. Negative Questions**

Negative questions are formed with a negative auxiliary in the short form, e.g. *Aren't you Bill's brother?*

Negative questions are used:

- to express emotions (surprise, anger, annoyance, disappointment, shock, etc.).
- when a positive answer is expected.
- to make sure that some information is correct.
- in exclamations.

Examples

- Hasn't he finished his report yet?*
Can't you drive? I thought you could.
It's past midnight. Shouldn't you be in bed? (Obviously yes.)
Doesn't she live in Paris?
Wasn't it a wonderful day?

note

- If there are two auxiliary verbs, the first one is in the negative form.
Haven't you been watching the news?
- We may use the full form of **not** in negative questions for emphasis or in formal speech.
Has he not signed the contract yet?

D. Question Tags

Question tags are short questions placed at the end of a statement.

Formation

Auxiliary/Modal Verb + Subject Pronoun

- If the statement is positive, the question tag is negative.
- If the statement is negative, the question tag is positive.

Examples

You can drive a car, can't you?

He is coming to work, isn't he?

You didn't forget to buy bread, did you?

She hardly noticed anything, did she?

note

Question tags are asked:

- with rising intonation (↑), when we are not sure about some information and are asking for confirmation.
You have a driving licence, don't you? (↑) Yes, I do.
- with falling intonation (↓), when we are sure about the information and expect the listener to agree.
It's quite cold today, isn't it? (↓) Yes, it is.

I am your best friend, **aren't I?**

Let's go out tonight, **shall we?**

Let me give you a hand, **will/won't you?**

Leave the window open, **will/can/would/could you?**

Don't forget to buy some groceries, **will you?**

This/That is an amazing story, **isn't it?**

Nothing is wrong, **is it?**

There's no reason for him to come over, **is there?**

They've got two children, **haven't they?**

She has breakfast every morning, **doesn't she?**

Everyone agreed with his proposal, **didn't they?**

Somebody must take care of the situation, **mustn't they?**

No one would ever trust him, **would they?**

E. Indirect Questions

Indirect questions begin with phrases such as **Can/Could you tell me...? Do you know...? Can you remember...?** **Can/Could you explain...? Have you any idea...?** etc. They are used mostly when we ask for information.

Formation	Examples
• introductory phrase + question word + subject + verb when the direct question begins with a question word	<i>Where is the National Gallery? → Could you tell me where the National Gallery is?</i>
• introductory phrase + if/whether + subject + verb when the direct question does not include a question word	<i>Was the flight delayed? → Do you know if the flight was delayed?</i>

note

The auxiliaries **do**, **does** and **did** are never used in indirect questions.
Does he play golf regularly? → Do you know if he plays golf regularly?

Grammar Practice

A Write questions. The answers are the words in bold type.

1. _____
The red jumper suits you better than the blue one.
2. _____
I'm afraid not. The basketball player didn't sign the contract.
3. _____
The price includes **two meals at the hotel restaurant**, so it's convenient.
4. _____
She felt **embarrassed** when she fell, as most of her guests were around.
5. _____
Yes, the library opens at 9:00 a.m. every weekday.
6. _____
Professor Burns will give his lecture **at the Palace Hotel**.
7. _____
I'm buying a computer **because I need it for my job**.
8. _____
Paula persuaded Jane to go on a diet. Isn't it great?
9. _____
My new house **is big and has a garden at the front**.
10. _____
I suppose you can go to the beach with your friends.

B Use the words in brackets to make negative questions.

1. "Last year the children organised a bazaar to raise money for the hospital.
_____? (**it/be/a great idea**)" "Yes, I think they should do it again."
2. "I bought a new jacket today but the sleeve is torn!"
"_____? (**you/should/take/it/back**)" "Yes, I will. I'll ask for another one."
3. "_____? (**the Town Hall/be/just around the corner**)" "Yes, that's right."
4. "You've ruined my jumper by spilling coffee on it and last week you spilt bleach on my jeans.
_____? (**you/can/do/anything right**)"
5. "You haven't bought any bread. "_____? (**you/go/to the baker's**)"
"No, I went to the supermarket but completely forgot to buy bread."

C Complete using question tags.

Tanya: ... and the animal rights group I'm in is trying to close down one of the research laboratories.

Brenda: Do you think that's really necessary? I mean, there's a need for these experiments, (1) _____?

Let's consider the advantages of these experiments, (2) _____? Scientists must test new medical treatment somehow, (3) _____? With these tests they can see how effective and safe the treatments are. Everyone wants new vaccines and safer drugs, (4) _____?

Tanya: I see your point, but scientists don't really care about the animals, (5) _____? Are you aware that thousands of animals die every year as a result of these experiments? Scientists should find another way of testing their discoveries, (6) _____?

D Make Indirect Questions using the phrases, **Can/Could you tell me...?**, **Can/Could you explain...?**, **Do you know...?**, **Have you any idea...?**, **Can you remember...?**.

1. How do you operate this camera? _____
2. Who wrote this book? _____
3. Has the Moore family moved to their new house? _____
4. When is their wedding anniversary? _____
5. Did we invite John to our house? _____
6. Was the trip postponed? _____
7. Whose is the luggage in the living room? _____
8. Where should I get my eyes tested? _____
9. What time did you set your alarm clock for? _____
10. Are you working this weekend? _____

E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. What was the price of the ticket?
pay How _____ the ticket?
2. Whose car is this?
belong Who _____ to?
3. The documentary was interesting, wasn't it?
boring The documentary _____ it?
4. How did the fire start, sir?
explain Could you _____, sir?
5. Mr Wesley, what caused you to resign so suddenly?
why Mr Wesley, _____ so suddenly?
6. Can you tell me Tom's address, Ken?
lives Can you tell me _____, Ken?
7. What's the distance from the village to the beach?
it How _____ from the village to the beach?
8. Should I inform our clients about the change of plans?
whether I'd like to know _____ our clients about the change of plans.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

ring up:	telephone
run along:	go away
run away:	leave from a place that makes you unhappy, escape
run into:	meet sb unexpectedly
run out (of):	have no more of sth left
run over:	knock down a person or animal with a vehicle

- Michael _____ from his boarding school because he thought it was too strict.
- I can't start the car because I've _____ of petrol.
- Peter, _____ now and play with the other children.
- I _____ the restaurant and made a reservation.
- You'll never believe who I _____ the other day.
- I accidentally _____ a cat as I was parking my car.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

off duty:	not working
off school/work:	away from school or not working because you are ill
on behalf of:	as a representative of sb
on business:	in another place, working
on the contrary:	(1) not at all (2) quite the reverse
on a diet:	not eating very much because you are trying to lose weight
on duty:	working
on an excursion/ a journey/ a tour/a trip, etc.:	away for these reasons
on fire:	burning
on foot:	walking

- If you are _____, you should avoid eating fatty foods and sugar.
- Sue doesn't take the bus to school. She goes _____.
- We are planning to go _____ to Bath next weekend. Would you like to join us?
- Police officers don't carry their guns when they are _____.
- I'm going to give a talk _____ the whole school.
- Extra staff were called _____ at the hospital after the terrible earthquake.
- I don't believe you; _____, I believe Bill.
- Keith is in Brazil _____ this week. His job requires him to meet overseas clients.
- You aren't feeling well and you've got a temperature! Take a few days _____. I'm sure your boss will understand.
- Call the fire brigade. The neighbour's house is _____.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

AIM FOR SUCCESS

It is thought that some people are just born to be (1) _____. They seem to have everything, from a (2) _____ talent for things others find difficult, to the best (3) _____ in the largest company in town. Their success causes many people to become very (4) _____ of them. However, these people study hard, go to (5) _____ respectable universities and obtain diplomas or (6) _____ to make sure that they will be (7) _____ enough to get on in life. It is (8) _____ to believe that their success in life is written in their genes, and totally (9) _____ to think that there is no (10) _____ between hard work and reward.

SUCCESS

NATURE

EMPLOY

ENVY

VARY

CERTIFY

QUALIFY

FOOL

REASON

RELATE

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

bundle (n): a number of things wrapped or tied together in order to be carried

heap (n): pile of things arranged in an untidy way

pile (n): a quantity of things arranged neatly one on top of the other

bunch (n): a number of similar things fastened, growing or grouped together (grapes, keys, etc.)

pack (n/v): (n) a collection of things packed together (in a bag or packet)
(v) put your belongings into a bag because you're leaving a place or going on holiday

packet (n): small container made of thin cardboard, paper or plastic, in which items of the same kind are sold (biscuits, cigarettes, etc.)

package (n): small parcel

parcel (n): sth wrapped up in paper, usually to be given or sent to sb by post

wrap (v): fold paper or cloth around sth in order to cover it completely

fasten (v): do sth up by means of buttons, straps, buckles or other devices

tie (v): fasten with a string or rope, making a knot

fold (v): bend sth so that one part covers another

1. His room is very untidy; his clothes are all thrown in a _____ in a corner.

2. I bought my mother a _____ of flowers on Mother's Day.

3. Kerry keeps her old magazines tied up in _____ in the attic.

4. I want you to arrange these folders in alphabetical order and put them in a neat _____ on my desk.

5. Could you get me a _____ of crisps?

6. I'd like to send this _____ to Africa. How much will it cost?

7. Simon is busy _____ his clothes for the trip.

8. Little John is learning to _____ his shoelaces.

9. Please _____ your seat belts.

10. Could you _____ this for me? It's a gift.

11. Would you _____ these sheets for me and put them in the bottom drawer?



20 Clauses I

A. Relative Clauses

Relative clauses are introduced by **relative pronouns** (*who, whose, whom, which, that*) or **relative adverbs** (*when, where, why*).

Relative Pronouns	For people	For animals/things
who, that, which (subject of the verb—cannot be omitted)	who/that <i>I saw a boy. He could ride his bike without using his hands.</i> → <i>I saw a boy who could ride his bike without using his hands.</i>	which/that <i>He has written a book. It is about the history of education.</i> → <i>He has written a book which is about the history of education.</i>
who, whom, that, which (object of the verb—can be omitted)	who/whom/that <i>He liked his new classmate. He met him at school yesterday.</i> → <i>He liked his new classmate (who/whom/that) he met at school yesterday.</i> Whom is used in formal speech or after prepositions.	which/that <i>That hat looks old-fashioned. She bought it recently.</i> → <i>The hat (which/that) she bought recently looks old-fashioned.</i>
whose, of which (possession—cannot be omitted)	whose <i>I know the writer. His latest novel was a great success.</i> → <i>I know the writer whose latest novel was a great success.</i>	whose/of which <i>I have a car. Its engine is noisy.</i> → <i>I have a car whose engine/the engine of which is noisy.</i>

note

- ▶ Prepositions normally go **after** relative pronouns. In formal speech, prepositions can go before **whom** and **which** only (not before **who/that/whose**).
The bed (that/which) I slept in last night was very soft. (usual)
The bed in which I slept last night was very soft. (formal)
- ▶ **Expressions of quantity** (some of, many of, a few of, most of, half of, neither of, none of, a number of, etc.) can be followed by **whom/which/whose**.
Our company has 80 employees, most of whom are computer literate.
- ▶ **Which** sometimes refers to a whole sentence and cannot be omitted.
The lift was out of order and this was very inconvenient. →
The lift was out of order, which was very inconvenient.

Relative adverbs	Use	Examples
when (can sometimes be omitted)	Time	<i>I'll never forget the day (when) I first met my best friend.</i>
where	Place	<i>The village where I grew up is very small.</i>
why (can sometimes be omitted)	Reason	<i>The reason (why) he left was that he felt disappointed.</i>

note

- ▶ **That** can be used instead of **when**.
I'll never forget the summer when / that we went to Nice.
- ▶ **In/on/at which** can be used instead of **when** and **where**. **Where** can be omitted or substituted by **that** if the verb is followed by a preposition.
We stayed at a rather cheap hotel. →
The hotel where / at which we stayed was rather cheap. or
The hotel (that) we stayed at was rather cheap.

note**Defining and non-defining relative clauses**

- **Defining relative clauses** provide information which is essential to the meaning of the sentence. No commas are used.
Students who cheat should be punished.
- **Non-defining relative clauses** provide additional information (not essential to the meaning of the sentence). They are put between commas. The relative pronouns cannot be omitted; neither can we use **that** instead of them.
Dr Miller, who is the Head of the Department, will attend the reception.

B. Clauses of Time

Clauses of time are introduced by: **when, as, while, as soon as, before, after, until, till, by the time, just as, since, the moment (that), whenever, every time**, etc. They can go before the main clause (separated by a comma) or after the main clause (no comma is required).

As soon as the fire alarm went off, everyone left the building.

Everyone left the building as soon as the fire alarm went off.

Sequence of tenses

Main clause	Time clause	Examples
present / future	present	<i>I'll wait until the rain stops.</i>
past	past	<i>I waited until the rain stopped.</i>

Time conjunctions

Conjunctions	Use	Examples
when as while	• for two events happening at the same time	<i>He dropped his shopping bag as he was running to catch the bus.</i>
just (as)	• for two short actions happening at the same time	<i>Just as we got to the beach, it started to rain.</i>
when as soon as before after	• for events taking place one after the other	<i>They may go out after they finish/have finished their homework. He left before I could explain anything.</i>
by the time	• meaning "not later than"	<i>I will have finished my work by the time you arrive (= no later than the time you arrive).</i>
until, till	• meaning "up to a certain time"	<i>I won't leave until I have finished everything.</i>

Grammar Practice**A Complete using **who, whose, which, that, where, why or -**.**

Sherlock Holmes, (1) _____ name is well-known, didn't really exist. However, for many (2) _____ have read his adventures, he might as well have been a real person.

The man (3) _____ created Holmes was Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, born in Edinburgh in 1859. He trained as a doctor, but found he could earn more money by writing than by practising medicine. He wrote not only stories about Holmes, but many other books (4) _____ people also liked. However, it is for the detective stories (5) _____ he wrote that he is best remembered.

The place (6) _____ the Holmes mysteries are set is Victorian England. Holmes, (7) _____ is a

brilliant detective, uses his intelligence and scientific knowledge to solve the mysteries.

Even though Doyle wrote many Holmes mysteries, we'll never know the reason (8) _____ he gave us so little information about Holmes' private life. All the books were written in the first person, not by Holmes, but by his assistant, Dr Watson, (9) _____ knowledge of his master's private life was limited.

B Join the sentences using relative pronouns or adverbs. Omit them where possible.

1. The journalist will interview the old man. His house was broken into last night.

2. I remembered the man. I had seen him at the supermarket.

3. We visited the town. We were born there.

4. Bill and Jim haven't been talking to each other for days. There must be a reason.

5. People believe that the old building should be pulled down. The old building is on Park Street.

6. She got up late and missed the boat. That was quite foolish of her.

7. I invited Mrs Kansas to my house. She lives next door.

8. We must arrange a time. Then we can discuss the problem.

C Choose the correct answers.

(1) _____ we hear Walt Disney's name, we immediately think of the huge company which produces the world's most popular cartoon characters. This is Disney's story.

Walt Disney was born in 1901. (2) _____ he was growing up on a farm in Missouri, he became interested in sketching. He drew sketches of the animals living on the farm.

He attended an art school (3) _____ he was fourteen for a short period of time. (4) _____ the war ended, he worked at a commercial art studio in Kansas City, where he met Ub Iwerks in 1919. They

worked together (5) _____ Iwerks died. Together they began making advertisements, but it wasn't long (6) _____ they began creating and selling their own cartoons. The success of these cartoons was what made Disney decide to start his own cartoon production company in 1923.

It was in 1928 that his most famous character was

created - Mickey Mouse. (7) _____ the character appeared, it became very popular.

1. a. While b. Whenever c. Just

2. a. As b. As soon as c. Once

3. a. as b. when c. just

4. a. By the time b. Every time c. After

5. a. since b. when c. until

6. a. before b. after c. once

7. a. The sooner b. Before c. The moment

- (8) _____ Disney created other popular characters, such as Minnie Mouse, Donald Duck, Goofy and Pluto, sound and colour had been added to animation.
- (9) _____ this had happened, the cartoons became truly magical.
- By the mid-30s, Disney was very successful and his organisation had grown into a "factory" of men and women. (10) _____ he continued making cartoons, he also began making feature-length cartoon films, such as Snow White and The Seven Dwarfs, which proved to be successful (11) _____ it was released.
- Disneyland in California opened in 1955, Disneyworld in Florida in 1971 and Eurodisney in Paris in 1991.
- (12) _____ a child enters these amusement parks, they enter an enchanted world where anything and everything is possible. (13) _____ there are children and adults young at heart, these parks will remain open. Disney died in 1966. Since then, his name has been the most popular in children's entertainment.
- | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 8. a. Until | b. By the time | c. Since |
| 9. a. Once | b. Whenever | c. Till |
| 10. a. While | b. The moment | c. When |
| 11. a. by the time | b. as soon as | c. until |
| 12. a. While | b. As long as | c. Every time |
| 13. a. As long as | b. Until | c. As soon as |

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- I hadn't heard from Robert for years and yesterday I received a letter from him.
who Yesterday I received a letter from Robert, _____ from for years.
- Charlie, everyone will be asleep when you come.
time Charlie, _____, everyone will be asleep.
- In 2010 they went on their first trip to Europe.
was 2010 _____ they went on their first trip to Europe.
- I spoke to a very helpful assistant manager last week.
whom The assistant manager _____ last week was very helpful.
- We've interviewed all of the candidates but we haven't found anyone suitable for the job.
none We've interviewed all of the candidates, _____ for the job.
- During a walk in the forest Kelly was stung by a bee.
while Kelly was stung by a bee _____ in the forest.
- The shop where I used to work has closed down.
which The shop _____ work has closed down.
- I went to two pay phones, but they were both out of order.
which I went to two pay phones, _____ worked.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

save up: economise by spending less than you earn, usually for a purpose

sell out: sell all the stocks of sth, so that there is no more left for people to buy (goods, tickets, etc.)

set off: begin a journey

set out: (1) start a journey
(2) start doing sth

set up: (1) establish sth (home, business, organisation, etc.)
(2) make the necessary preparations for sth to start

- I _____ to do some gardening, but it started raining.
- John had been _____ his pocket money for months to buy a bike.
- Tickets for the football match were _____ in just one day!
- We _____ on our trip very early in the morning.
- My parents helped me _____ my own business.

B Complete using prepositions.



- This wardrobe is full _____ children's toys.
- The children were covered _____ mud from head to toe.
- The students were divided _____ two teams.
- Does this bag belong _____ anyone here?
- These beautifully-designed ornaments are made _____ silver.
- The stadium was crowded _____ screaming spectators.
- This game is very different _____ any other game I've played.
- The taste of broccoli is similar _____ that of cauliflower.
- According _____ the map, we'll find Queen St straight ahead.
- There's hardly any difference in taste _____ these two refreshments.
- Keep these magazines separate _____ the newspapers.
- Your drink consists _____ different types of fruit juices.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

WHAT A CHARACTER!

Lots of parents try to make (1) _____ about their children's character from a very early age. Graphologists also claim that they are able to understand a person's character by examining their handwriting! How big the letters are, how straight the lines, the presence of loops and even your (2) _____, can reveal something about your (3) _____. For example, if your handwriting slants to the right, you have a (4) _____ nature. Writing with upward arches indicates that you are (5) _____. A high t-bar means that the writer is (6) _____ and for some people this shows they are (7) _____. But there is much more to be seen in your handwriting. (8) _____, there are about two-hundred and fifty signs which graphologists take into (9) _____ when analysing a person's writing. How accurate or how (10) _____ this is, is up to the individual to decide.

PREDICT

- SIGN**
- PERSON**
- CHEER**
- CREATE**
- IMAGINE**
- AMBITION**
- APPARENT**
- CONSIDER**
- BELIEVE**

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

regard (v):	believe that sb or sth has a particular quality
think (v):	have an opinion or impression about sth
consider (v):	(1) think carefully about sth (2) have an opinion about sb or sth
suppose (v):	imagine that sth is probably true
imagine (v):	form an idea or picture of sth in your mind
learn (v):	obtain knowledge or a skill through studying or training
find out (v):	learn sth you didn't know, especially through deliberate effort
discover (v):	(1) become aware of sth you didn't know before (2) find sb or sth by chance or because you have been looking for them
invent (v):	create or make up sth for the first time
explore (v):	investigate sth (a place or scientific field) systematically in order to find out more facts about it
inspect (v):	examine sth carefully in order to check that it is all right

1. Do you _____ I ought to talk to my boss about a raise?
2. I want you to _____ this; miles of golden sand and a beautiful blue sea. Doesn't it sound great?
3. Did you _____ Mr Field's offer carefully?
4. We _____ you as one of our best employees.
5. I saw Tom and Jerry out together, so I _____ they are getting along well.
6. Marconi _____ the radio.
7. Captain Cook _____ Australia in 1770.
8. The Apollo programme was set up to _____ outer space.
9. The insurance company has to _____ my car before paying me for the damage caused by the accident.
10. Craig has decided to attend classes in order to _____ French.
11. Did you _____ whether you're working this weekend or not?

21 Clauses II

A. Clauses of Concession

Clauses of concession express contrast, opposition or unexpected results and are introduced by **although, even though, though, in spite of, despite, however, but, while, whereas, no matter how**, etc.

Structures

although [] + subject + verb
 even though [] + subject + verb
 though [] + subject + verb

► **Even though** is stronger than **although**.

► **Though** is more informal and can go at the end of a sentence, meaning "however".

in spite of [] + noun/-ing form
 despite [] + noun/-ing form

in spite of [] + the fact + that-clause
 despite [] + the fact + that-clause

however [] + adj/adv + subject + verb
 no matter how [] + adj/adv + subject + verb

► **However** can also introduce a main clause.

whatever [] + clause
 no matter what [] + clause

adjective [] + as/though + subject + verb
 adverb [] + as/though + subject + verb

► A very emphatic and formal structure.

but [] + subject + verb
 while/whereas [] + subject + verb

► **Whereas** is more formal than **while**.

Examples

*Although he has plenty of money, he doesn't spend much.
 Even though there was a lot of snow, no trains were delayed.*

He has a driving licence. He rarely drives, though.

*In spite of feeling ill, she came to work.
 Despite her talent, she never became an artist.*

He didn't show up despite the fact that we had an appointment.

However hard she tries, she never manages to finish her work on time.

Vicky eats a lot. However, she isn't overweight.

Nobody believes him any more, no matter what he says.

Tired as/though she was, she offered to help us.

I like travelling by plane, while/whereas my sister doesn't.

B. Clauses of Reason

Reason is expressed with the following structures:

Structures

because + clause
 because of + noun/-ing form

as
 since

due to + noun/-ing form
 due to the fact + that-clause

Use

- to answer a question with "why"

- usually at the beginning of a sentence

- formal structure meaning "because (of)"

Examples

She couldn't get to work on time because the traffic was heavy / because of the heavy traffic.

As the weather was fine, we decided to go for a swim.

Due to a heavy snowstorm, all flights to Oslo were cancelled yesterday.

note

If a clause of reason or concession comes before the main clause, they are separated by a **comma**.
Since you don't trust him, don't tell him anything.

But: *Don't tell him anything since you don't trust him.*

Although the soup was cold, he ate it.

But: *He ate the soup although it was cold.*

10. Then I usually go to the supermarket to buy the newspapers.

11. Keep these in mind when you go to the supermarket to buy the newspapers.

12. Your drink consists _____ different types of fruit juices.

C. Clauses of Purpose

Purpose is expressed with the following structures:

Structures	Use	Examples
Infinitive	• informal structure	<i>I just called to invite you to my house.</i>
so as (not) to	• informal structures	<i>He walked in quietly so as not to wake up his parents.</i>
in order (not) to		<i>We are saving money in order to buy a new car.</i>
for + noun	• to express a person's intentions	<i>He went to the café for a coffee.</i>
for + -ing form	• to express the purpose or function of an item	<i>I use the electric knife for cutting meat.</i>
so that + can/may/will	• purpose with present or future time reference	<i>Please close the door so that the cat can't come in.</i>
so that + could/might/would	• purpose with past time reference	<i>He walked quietly so that nobody could hear his footsteps.</i>
in case + present tense	• purpose with present or future time reference	<i>I'll take an umbrella in case it rains.</i>
in case + past tense	• purpose with past time reference	<i>He gave me his telephone number in case I wanted to call him.</i>
with a view to [] + -ing form with the aim of []	• formal structure	<i>He took evening courses in Marketing with the aim of getting more qualifications.</i>
for fear / lest + subject + might/should	• negative purpose	<i>He fled his country for fear he might be arrested.</i>
for fear of + noun/-ing form		<i>He fled his country for fear of being arrested.</i>

note

Clauses of purpose follow the rules of the sequence of tenses.

D. Clauses of Result

Clauses of result express a deduction or the result of an action and are introduced with: **so...that, such...that, etc.**

Structures	Examples
such (a/an) + (adjective) + noun + that...	<i>He was such a wise man that everyone respected him.</i> <i>They were such nice people that everyone enjoyed their company.</i>
such a lot of + noun + that...	<i>Their new car cost such a lot of money that I wondered how they could afford it.</i>
so + adjective/adverb + that...	<i>The fog was so thick that we couldn't see across the street.</i>
so + [much, many little, few] + (noun) + that...	<i>He had made so many mistakes that he had to write his report again.</i>
so + adjective + a/an + noun + that...	<i>It was so boring a book that I nearly fell asleep while reading it.</i>
(and) so, (and) therefore ► therefore is more formal than so	<i>He had the qualifications required, so he got the job.</i>

Grammar Practice

C

A Make one sentence using the words in brackets.

Advertising Facts

a.

1. Products are advertised mainly through the media. This way, consumers become familiar with the variety of products available. (so that)
-
-

2. Large companies employ advertising agencies. They want to make their product attractive to consumers. (so as to)
-
-

3. Companies spend millions of dollars on advertising. They want to increase their sales. (with the aim of)
-
-

4. Advertisers must consider their advertisements carefully. They can't afford to be accused of persuading people to buy things they don't need. (for fear of)
-
-

5. All advertisements are reviewed by a consumer protection agency. False information mustn't be given to the public. (in case)
-
-

B Read Martha's opinions. Continue the sentences using so or such.

Martha's book reviews - Read them if you dare!

D

1. The book "Walk in the Sky" was boring. I stopped reading it halfway through.

The book was _____

It was _____

2. "Adventures in the Pacific", a novel, has many funny characters. Both young and old will love it.

The novel has _____

There are _____

3. The book "Tough" has a lot of violence. Many people will refuse to read it.

The book has _____

There is _____

4. The book "Dark Room" was very interesting. I couldn't put it down.

The book was _____

It was _____

1. V

r

2. T

k

3. I

c

4. Y

s

5. S

tl

6. T

c

7. K

se

8. P

fa

C Choose the correct answers.

a. (1) _____ I had set the alarm, it didn't go off, (2) _____ I was late for work. I've decided to go shopping today to buy a new alarm clock (3) _____ something like this happens again. I don't want to lose my job just (4) _____ of an alarm clock!

- | | | |
|----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. a. Although | b. Because | c. Despite |
| 2. a. since | b. so | c. because |
| 3. a. in case | b. so as | c. in order |
| 4. a. because | b. due | c. though |

b. We have (5) _____ a lot of fun going on camping trips that we go at least twice a year. I've got all the necessary equipment,

(6) _____ you can borrow (7) _____ you need. Just remember (8) _____ well you've planned the trip, expect the unexpected!

Pack a first-aid kit, tins of food, bottles of water (9) _____ you'll be prepared for everything.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------|
| 5. a. such | b. so | c. therefore |
| 6. a. therefore | b. while | c. whereas |
| 7. a. however | b. whatever | c. even though |
| 8. a. no matter | b. because | c. however |
| 9. a. in case | b. so that | c. so as |



D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Whatever they try to do, the police will stop them.

no The police will stop them _____ to do.

2. The road was slippery, so they couldn't drive fast.

because They couldn't drive fast _____ road.

3. I've brought some extra blankets because it might get colder at night.

case I've brought some extra blankets _____ at night.

4. You know, I felt disappointed but I didn't give up trying.

spite You know, _____, I didn't give up trying.

5. She is very talented but she doesn't draw professionally.

though Talented _____, she doesn't draw professionally.

6. The children hid the cake they had made because they wanted to surprise their mother.

could The children hid the cake they had made _____ surprise their mother.

7. Kate was too tired to do any housework.

so Kate was _____ couldn't do any housework.

8. Paul went out even though he wasn't feeling well.

fact Paul went out _____ wasn't feeling well.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

- settle down:** start living a quiet life in a place, especially after getting married or buying a house
- sit up:** take a sitting position after lying down or leaning back
- stand by:** (1) ready and waiting to provide help or take action
(2) provide loyal support to sb
- stand out:** be noticeable
- stand up for:** defend sb or sth and make your feelings or opinions clear

- Red is used to signify danger because it _____ among other colours.
- All emergency rescue teams were _____ to help take care of the survivors of the plane crash.
- Craig is too young to get married and _____. He's only 18!
- Always _____ your beliefs.
- You're well enough to _____ today, but don't get out of bed.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.



- on the one/other hand:** from one point of view/from the opposite point of view
- on holiday:** on vacation, relaxing
- on one's mind:** in one's thoughts
- on one's own:** alone, without help
- on the phone:** having a telephone conversation
- on purpose:** deliberately, not by accident
- on the radio/television:** broadcast by radio or television stations
- on sale:** available to be bought in shops
- on second thought(s):** completely changing your mind about sth, reconsidering sth
- on strike:** refusing to work as a sign of protest

- These diaries are _____ everywhere.
- I was planning to go to Bill's house but _____. I won't, as I have to wake up early in the morning.
- Can you please be quiet? I'm speaking _____.
- The workers of this factory are _____, demanding better working conditions.
- There are too many commercials _____. It's so annoying when you're watching an interesting programme.
- We could always do the cooking for dinner ourselves, but _____ it might be easier if we went to that new restaurant around the corner.
- Did you really build this tree house _____? That's great!
- What's wrong? You look like you have a lot _____.
- I'm sure he didn't do it _____. It must have been an accident.
- I'm sorry but Mr Sullivan won't be able to help you. He's gone abroad _____ for two weeks.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

HOME SWEET HOME

What will homes be like by the year 2050? What (1) _____ will there be in the general standard of living?

Forget about entering the house with a key. (2) _____ will only be possible with a (3) _____ card.

It will be of no (4) _____ if you leave lights or heaters on when you go out.

They will be switched off (5) _____.

The (6) _____ of your house will not be a problem. With new technology and ideas, (7) _____ against fire and intruders will be guaranteed.

Doing the shopping, going to the bank, talking and seeing people on the other side of the world without leaving home will all be possible due to the (8) _____ of 21st - century technology.

Each home will have a (9) _____ computer to make life comfortable and easier by controlling all sorts of (10) _____ devices.

IMPROVE

ADMIT

PERSON

IMPORTANT

AUTOMATIC

SAFE

PROTECT

EXIST

CENTRE

PRACTICE

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

encourage (v): give sb the confidence they need in order to do sth

support (v):
 (1) help, encourage
 (2) agree with or approve of sb's ideas or plans

assist (v): help sb finish their work or task

aid (v):
 (1) help or assist sb
 (2) provide a person, country or organisation with money, equipment or services they need

help (v): make it easier for sb to do sth, assist

save (v): help sb to avoid harm or to escape from a dangerous situation

rescue (v): get sb out of an unpleasant or dangerous situation

defend (v): take action in order to protect or support sb or sth

guard (v): watch over in order to protect or not allow to escape

manage (to) (v): (1) be responsible for a business or organisation
 (2) succeed in coping with difficulties

control (v): have the power to manipulate sth or make important decisions about it

check (v): examine sth to make sure that it is correct, accurate or of good quality

1. The parties in parliament are prepared to _____ the new tax laws.

2. My parents always _____ me to do my best.

3. The profits from the fundraiser will go to _____ the hungry in Africa.

4. The nurse _____ the doctor during the operation.

5. Could you _____ me get these curtains down?

6. There is an international campaign to _____ the whale from extinction.

7. The firemen _____ ten people from the burning building.

8. The National Bank is _____ by the police 24 hours a day.

9. Will you _____ your country in time of war?

10. A computer _____ the automatic doors at the airport.

11. How did you _____ to get this old car running again?

12. Did you _____ the quality of the material?

Revision | 05

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. I'll be on holiday _____ you receive this letter.
 a. just b. while c. by the time d. since
2. I bought these magazines _____ have something to read on the trip.
 a. so that b. so as to c. for d. in order
3. My boss wanted to know whether _____ the documents or not.
 a. had I sent b. if I sent c. if I had sent d. I had sent
4. " _____ luggage is this?"
 "It's Karen's."
 a. What b. Which c. How much d. Whose
5. _____ we arrived late, we didn't miss the speech.
 a. Despite b. In spite of c. Even though d. However
6. They suggested _____ the archaeological site.
 a. that visit b. visiting c. to visit d. to visiting
7. We had _____ food left over that we had to throw it away.
 a. such much b. so many c. so a lot of d. such a lot of
8. That's the artist _____ paintings are very fashionable.
 a. whose b. which c. who d. –
9. The manager of the shop, _____ is a friend of mine, offered me a discount.
 a. which b. whose c. who d. whom
10. The man denied _____ us before.
 a. to have seen b. that he has seen c. having seen d. not to have seen
11. Let's organise a short trip for the weekend, _____?
 a. don't we b. do we c. will we d. shall we
12. Can you tell me _____?
 a. how much does this sweater cost b. how much this sweater costs c. what does this sweater cost d. how this sweater costs
13. I'll always remember the place _____ we went on holiday last year.
 a. which b. at where c. where d. to where
14. Our team didn't win despite _____ very well.
 a. playing b. being played c. of playing d. they didn't play
15. No one asked for me while I was out, _____?
 a. did he b. didn't he c. did they d. didn't they

B Us
me1. "D
us2. Re
m3. Yo
ill4. Th
wh5. I'll
so6. Yo
sp7. "T
hi8. Sal
wi

A Ch

1. D
a.2. I'm
a.3. Th
a.4. Th
a.5. Th
a.6. Th
a.7. He
a.8. I've
a.9. Th
a.10. Wh
a.11. Ho
a.

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. "Do you have anything to declare?" asked the customs officer.
us The customs officer _____ anything to declare.
2. Rosie had lost a lot of weight, so I hardly recognised her.
much Rosie had lost _____ I hardly recognised her.
3. You know, Mr Davidson was ill, so he couldn't go to work for a week.
illness Mr Davidson couldn't go to work for a week _____, you know.
4. They live in a modern and spacious flat.
where The flat _____ modern and spacious.
5. I'll leave only after you apologise for what you said.
soon I'll leave _____ for what you said.
6. You know, although she was angry, she managed to speak calmly.
spite You know, _____, she managed to speak calmly.
7. "I'll inform you next Monday," Sam said to Mike.
him Sam told Mike that she _____ Monday.
8. Sally regrets not having entered the competition.
wishes Sally _____ the competition.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. Don't use that machine. It's out of _____.
a. danger b. work c. control d. order
2. I'm here _____ behalf of the workers.
a. for b. in c. on d. at
3. This material is different _____ the one I bought yesterday.
a. for b. with c. of d. to
4. The shop assistant offered to _____ the gift for me.
a. fasten b. fold c. wrap d. tie
5. They hired two people to _____ the offices.
a. defend b. support c. assist d. guard
6. The rock star gave only one _____ when he was on tour.
a. interview b. discussion c. debate d. dialogue
7. He was so startled by the scary man that he _____ the shopping bags he was carrying.
a. spread b. flooded c. dropped d. spilt
8. I've never been to a tropical island but I can _____ how beautiful it must be.
a. think b. suppose c. consider d. imagine
9. The school _____ all the students to take an interest in the arts.
a. encouraged b. regarded c. supported d. managed
10. When ironing, I like to put the clothes in neat _____.
a. packs b. piles c. bunches d. heaps
11. How did you _____ to stop little Lisa from crying?
a. help b. control c. aid d. manage

12. As I was going home, I _____ that I had left my keys at the office.
 a. found out b. inspected c. discovered d. learnt
13. Whenever we go camping, we like to _____ the area for interesting plants and animals.
 a. discover b. find out c. explore d. learn
14. I need a _____ of sugar from the supermarket.
 a. packet b. bundle c. package d. parcel
15. I _____ John Westwood yesterday! I hadn't seen him for ages!
 a. stood by b. ran into c. ran along d. settled down

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. Students are under _____ stress when studying for exams. **CONSIDER**
2. It may seem _____, but many people believe that UFOs exist. **BELIEVE**
3. _____ to the concert is free for children under twelve. **ADMIT**
4. There was a(n) _____ and as a result we failed to meet last night. **UNDERSTAND**
5. Those papers are _____. Just throw them out. **IMPORTANT**
6. These dresses are Townsend's latest _____. **CREATE**
7. Children have a lot of _____. **IMAGINE**
8. We've made some _____ to our house. **IMPROVE**

C Choose the correct answers.

The Ancient Greeks (1) _____ the Olympic Games (2) _____ order to honour their gods. Thus, many religious ceremonies as well as sporting events took place during the Games in Olympia.

Taking part in the Games was considered a great honour, and athletes travelled long distances so (3) _____ to participate. If the city states (4) _____ at war, they did not cancel the Games. They simply (5) _____ their differences until the Games were over.

The Games were banned by Emperor Theodosius I, (6) _____ disapproved of the ceremonies and festivals. However, they were revived in 1896 by Baron Pierre de Coubertin, who (7) _____ them as a representation of ideals that the modern world needed. He (8) _____ that they symbolised the idea of cooperation between nations, honour, fairness, and high moral and physical standards.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. a. set off | 3. a. as | 5. a. put on | 7. a. viewed |
| b. set up | b. that | b. put away | b. supposed |
| c. set out | c. for | c. put aside | c. imagined |
| d. set in | d. though | d. put out | d. regarded |
-
- | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 2. a. in | 4. a. are | 6. a. which | 8. a. says |
| b. on | b. had been | b. whose | b. said |
| c. at | c. were | c. whom | c. has said |
| d. for | d. will be | d. who | d. is saying |

22 Linking Words

The linking words listed below join either main clauses or parts of the same sentence (not a main with a subordinate clause).

Linking words	Use	Examples
and, both...and, or, either...or, neither...nor	• co-ordination	<i>He is both lazy and irresponsible.</i> <i>Neither your parents nor your teachers would approve of such bad behaviour.</i>
too, not only...but also, not only...but...as well, as well as, besides, in addition to this, furthermore, what is more	• to give additional information	<i>As well as losing his job, he lost most of his friends.</i>
but, however, nevertheless, on the other hand, regardless of, yet, contrary to, in contrast to, in comparison to	• to express contrast	<i>She cooks well but she hates washing up afterwards.</i> <i>She was not prepared for the test; however, she managed to pass it.</i>
in fact, as a matter of fact, actually, indeed, to tell you the truth, strangely enough	• for emphasis	<i>To tell you the truth, I didn't know that he was leaving.</i> <i>We had a very good time, indeed.</i>
like, as, likewise, similarly, in the same way ► like + noun/pronoun/-ing form = similar to as + subject + verb = similar to ► as + article + noun describes sb's job or the function of sth	• manner or comparison	<i>Exercising strengthens our body; likewise, eating more vegetables improves our health.</i> <i>He behaves like a real gentleman.</i> <i>We left everything as we found it.</i> <i>She works as a shop assistant.</i> <i>I used a folded blanket as a pillow.</i>
like, such as, for example, for instance, especially, particularly, in particular	• to give an example	<i>Electronic devices such as mobile phones should not be used during the flight.</i>
in other words, specifically, to be (more) specific, that is to say, I mean	• to clarify the meaning of a sentence	<i>The company is facing financial difficulties; in other words, they cannot pay off their debts.</i>
so, therefore, otherwise, thus, in this case, for this reason, under those circumstances, consequently, as a consequence, as a result	• to express the results or the consequences of a situation	<i>Alex didn't sleep at all last night and consequently he feels very tired today.</i>
but (for), except (for), apart from	• exception	<i>Apart from her mother-in-law, everyone liked Tricia's wedding dress.</i>
beginning: initially, first, first of all, at first, to begin/start with continuing: second, secondly, after this/that, afterwards, then, next concluding: finally, lastly, last but not least, in the end, eventually, to conclude, in conclusion	• to organise the text	<i>First you boil some salted water. Then you add the pasta and cook for ten minutes. Finally you drain the pasta, add some butter and serve immediately with your favourite sauce and grated cheese.</i>
regarding, considering, concerning, with respect/regard to, as for, as to	• for reference	<i>The government must take serious action with regard to the problem of pollution.</i>
to summarise, to sum up, in summary, in short, on the whole, (all) in all, altogether	• to summarise	<i>To summarise, this novel gives us a clear picture of life in the nineteenth century.</i>
in my opinion/view, according to, personally	• to give opinions	<i>According to most art critics, Guernica is a masterpiece of modern art.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Circle the correct answers.

(1) Regardless of / As for what you may think, and (2) apart from / contrary to popular belief, pasta is not an Italian invention, (3) however / but a Chinese one. (4) To be more specific / In addition to this, legend has it that Marco Polo, the explorer, learnt the recipe for pasta from the Chinese (5) and / or brought it to Italy. Pasta is the most important food in Italy. (6) In fact / In short, it is served (7) as / like a starter to any meal. It is (8) not only / both popular in Italy (9) but / and also in other countries, where it is served with different sauces. (10) In fact / As for the sauces, there are so many that even the most fussy eaters are sure to find something they like.

B Complete the sentences using the appropriate linking words from the box.

otherwise	not only...but also	neither...nor	to conclude in this case	but for however	personally next
either...or	in comparison to	besides			

1. I agree with you. _____, I believe that anything you learn is useful.
2. _____ my talk, I'd just like to emphasise how important it is to recycle anything we can.
3. I'd like to visit Spain with you. _____, I can't get the time off work.
4. You had better pack tonight, _____ you'll have too much to do in the morning.
5. And _____ in our meeting, we'll discuss this year's sales.
6. I would have been in deep trouble _____ my friend who is a lawyer.
7. This house is very small _____ ours.
8. He has many good qualities _____ being very intelligent.
9. _____ Michael _____ Stanley is going on the excursion because they want to study for their exam.
10. They _____ made the desserts _____ the appetisers.
11. You weren't responsible for the accident. _____, the other person must pay for the damage to your car.
12. You can take _____ the blue bag _____ the green one. Not both!

C Choose the correct answers.

(1) _____ my grandmother, my great-great-grandfather was a very important person in his town. (2) _____, he was one of the most famous craftsmen in the area. (3) _____, my great-great-grandfather was a very rich man and helped the poor as much as he could.

(4) _____, the moment he found out that a family was in need, he would secretly leave some food outside their door.

(5) _____, many people,

(6) _____ my grandmother, believed that he was the kindest person they had ever met.

(7) _____ these facts, one would think that

1. a. Specifically b. Concerning c. According to
2. a. As a matter of fact b. In the same way c. On the other hand
3. a. As well as b. Too c. Furthermore
4. a. Secondly b. Actually c. Last but not least
5. a. Nevertheless b. Consequently c. However
6. a. likewise b. like c. similarly
7. a. With regard b. Altogether c. Considering

everybody loved him but that wasn't so.

(8) _____, my great-great grandfather had a lot of enemies because of their jealousy.

(9) _____, there were some people who even tried to harm him. (10) _____, he thought of ways to protect himself and his family.

(11) _____, he constructed a special structure for the door and the windows of his house so that nobody could break in. (12) _____, he would always wake up in the middle of the night to check that everything was all right in the house and around it.

(13) _____, my great-great grandfather didn't hate his enemies at all because he believed that deep down they were (14) _____ good people. (15) _____ some day they would realise that what they did was wrong. (16) _____ my great-great grandmother, she was also a very kind woman who would always support her husband.

(17) _____, I'm really proud of my ancestors and I really hope I will be able to live in the same way they did, full of kindness.

8. a. Certainly b. Indeed c. Especially

9. a. As a result b. Otherwise c. In addition

10. a. For this reason b. In this case c. In other words

11. a. Similarly b. Such as c. For instance

12. a. What is more b. In addition to c. On the whole

13. a. Therefore b. In conclusion c. Strangely enough

14. a. both b. actually c. besides

15. a. and b. as c. otherwise

16. a. Besides b. As for c. Except

17. a. Yet b. Personally c. With regard to

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. I must admit that I haven't read the report yet.

tell To _____, I haven't read the report yet.

2. We are supposed to meet again in a week's time, which is next Thursday.

say We are supposed to meet again in a week's time, _____ next Thursday.

3. You know, he's a good swimmer but he also plays tennis very skillfully.

well You know, _____ a good swimmer, he plays tennis very skillfully.

4. We could visit them or we could call them instead.

either We _____ them.

5. You should not only join a gym but also follow a healthier diet.

addition You should follow a healthier diet _____ a gym.

6. The article was not only interesting but also informative, you know.

both The article _____, you know.

7. The truth is that he doesn't enjoy travelling very much.

fact As _____, he doesn't enjoy travelling very much.

8. I had to repeat the exam because I failed it.

consequence I failed the exam _____ I had to repeat it.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

take after: look like sb, resemble

take off: (1) leave the ground

(aeroplane) (2) remove (clothes)

take on: accept a job or responsibility

take over: win control or management of sth

take up: begin or become interested in a new hobby or activity

- The baby _____ his father. He's got the same blue eyes.
- You shouldn't _____ any more responsibilities if you feel you won't be able to handle them.
- The two brothers _____ the company when their father died.
- The plane had to make an emergency landing only a few minutes after it had _____.

C Complete the sentences using the appropriate prepositions.

B Complete using prepositions.



- The football team put the blame _____ the referee for not winning the game.
- He was angry _____ me for forgetting to buy the ingredients for the cake from the supermarket.
- He shouted _____ me for no reason at all.
- Will you forgive me _____ being so selfish?
- You can't always blame everyone else _____ your mistakes.
- They accused him _____ stealing the money from the counter.
- He was charged _____ murder and had to appear in court the next day.
- Kate apologised to us _____ being late.
- I disagree _____ the government's policy concerning traffic regulations.
- I'm having trouble _____ my car. Could you help me start it?
- Three young men have been arrested _____ breaking into the building.
- It's no use arguing _____ them; their decision is final.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

MAKING IT A BETTER PLACE TO LIVE

At times, it seems that people have no sense of (1) _____ towards their environment. They have the (2) _____ to drop their rubbish wherever they happen to be, even when there is no (3) _____ of rubbish bins. However, (4) _____ polluting has to change. Littering doesn't only make a place look ugly, it also puts public health at risk and can (5) _____ wildlife. The local and national authorities need to become more (6) _____ about how pollution affects our everyday lives, providing the community with a better (7) _____ concerning the preservation of the environment.

There is no quick or simple solution. One thing is certain, though. (8) _____ to act will, in the long term, mean a great (9) _____. The time to act is now. The (10) _____ is ours!

RESPONSE
TEND
SHORT
CARE
DANGER
INFORM
EDUCATE
FAIL
LOSE
CHOOSE

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

bite (v):	use your teeth to cut into sth
sip (v):	drink sth slowly by taking a small quantity at a time
chew (v):	break up food in your mouth (using your teeth) in order to swallow it
gulp (v):	eat or drink sth quickly by swallowing large quantities
swallow (v):	cause sth to go from your mouth down into your stomach
food (n):	what people or animals eat
meal (n):	the food you eat for breakfast, lunch or dinner
course (n):	one part of a meal (starter-main course-dessert)
dish (n):	food prepared in a particular style or combination
book (v):	(a hotel room, ticket, lesson, etc.) reserve sth, arrange to have or use it at a particular time
reserve (v):	(a table, ticket, magazine, seat, etc.) arrange for it to be kept especially for you

- Doctors say that we should always _____ our food well before swallowing it.
- She _____ down her milk as she was late for school.
- Ouch! I _____ my tongue by mistake.
- The little boy _____ a coin accidentally and was taken to hospital.
- We sat there for over an hour while he just _____ his coffee without saying a word.
- I never have three _____ a day; I usually skip lunch.
- The national _____ of Greece is moussaka.
- I don't think we should cook any _____ for dinner.
We can order pizzas.
- We were offered a three- _____ dinner.
- Diana _____ her flight three weeks beforehand.
- Could I _____ a table for two for Saturday evening, please?

23 Participles

Participles as adjectives

Present Participle (-ing)

Present participles as adjectives have an **active** meaning and describe a person, thing or event.
He is a hard-working person.
It was a very boring book.
The new teacher was fascinating.

Past Participle (-ed)

Past participles as adjectives have a **passive** meaning and describe a person's feelings or attitudes.
He looks exhausted.
The readers were utterly bored.
Everyone was fascinated by the new teacher.

Participles replacing clauses

A. The present participle is used:

Examples

- to replace a clause of time introduced with **when, while, as, after, before**, etc.
- for a lengthy action interrupted by a shorter or sudden one.
- for an action taking place at the same time as another one.
- for an action taking place immediately before another one.
- to replace a clause of manner.
- to replace a clause of reason introduced with **because, since, as, for**.
- to replace a relative clause in the active voice.

Walking home, he was attacked by a strange man. (As he was walking home, he was attacked by a strange man.)
I arrived at the examination centre feeling very nervous. (When I arrived at the examination centre, I was feeling very nervous.)
Opening the door, I found two letters on the floor. (As I opened the door, I found two letters on the floor.)
Reading books, he managed to improve his vocabulary. (He managed to improve his vocabulary by reading books.)
Not wanting to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop. (As they didn't want to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop.)
The girl talking to Jane is my sister. (= The girl who is talking to Jane is my sister.)

B. The past participle is used:

- instead of a subject + verb in the passive voice.
- to replace a relative clause in the passive voice.
- to replace a conditional sentence containing passive voice.

Shocked by the tragedy, they didn't know what to say. (They were shocked by the tragedy and didn't know what to say.)
Clothes made in France and Italy are very elegant. (Clothes which are made in France and Italy are very elegant.)
Stored in the fridge, the pudding will keep for up to one week. (If it is stored in the fridge, the pudding will keep for up to one week.)

C. The perfect participle is used for an action that happened before another one in the past.

- Active voice:** having + past participle
- Passive voice:** having been + past participle

Having finished cleaning up, she started cooking. (She finished cleaning up and then she started cooking.)
Having been seriously injured, the driver was rushed to hospital. (The driver had been seriously injured and was rushed to hospital.)

note

- Participles are sometimes accompanied by **when, while, before, after, if, though**.
He noticed the scratch while washing his car.
- If a participle is at the beginning of a sentence, its subject is the same as that of the main verb:
Crossing the road, I was nearly knocked down by a car.
But: *Pushing the button, the lift moved up to the third floor. (This would mean that the lift pushed the button.)*
- If the subject of the participle is different from the subject of the verb, it goes at the beginning of the sentence.
Weather permitting, we may drive to the beach.

Grammar Practice

A Complete using adjectives ending in -ing or -ed.

- We found Egypt _____ (fascinate).
- Karen was _____ (surprise) by the news.
- He was a _____ (love) father to all his children.
- We were _____ (amaze) to see so many birds.
- I am very _____ (please) with my results.
- The most _____ (annoy) thing was the heat.
- The doctor is _____ (concern) about your health.
- Fairy tales are _____ (enchant). Don't you agree?
- The seminar was very _____ (bore).
- The trip was great but _____ (exhaust).



B Complete using the present, the past or the perfect participle of the verbs in the brackets.

- While I was _____ (make) the salad, I cut my finger.
- _____ (warn) about the bad weather, they cancelled the fishing trip.
- _____ (read) the book, I then went to see the film.
- _____ (beat) well, the mixture will thicken.
- _____ (polish) his car, he then vacuumed it.
- The man _____ (give) the speech is my son.
- _____ (not feel) well, the boy left school early.
- _____ (surprise) by the event, we didn't know what to say.
- _____ (not know) where to go, I asked for directions.
- _____ (trap) in the car, they waited for help.
- _____ (cook) the dinner, she started to set the table.
- The food _____ (serve) by the guests had been prepared by caterers.
- The book, _____ (be) a great success, will be translated into other languages as well.
- Only articles _____ (write) by students will appear in the school's newspaper.
- _____ (spend) all my money, I asked my brother to lend me some more.

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- Don't forget to turn off the oven before you leave the house.
leaving Don't forget to turn off the oven _____ the house.
- You know, after painting the flat, it looked new.
been You know, _____, the flat looked new.
- The children's exam results were very impressive.
parents The children's _____ their exam results.
- Well, we decided to walk to work because the bus drivers were on strike.
being Well, _____ on strike, we decided to walk to work.
- If you look after it properly, the goldfish will live for at least two years.
looked The goldfish will live for at least two years _____ properly.

6. Unfortunately, I surfed the Net the whole afternoon and I didn't manage to finish my homework.
spent Unfortunately, _____ the whole afternoon surfing the Net,
 I didn't manage to finish my homework.

7. Anyone who doesn't pass the test must sit it again.
not Anyone _____, must sit it again.

8. I found that working six days a week tired me.
was Working six days a week _____ for me.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

turn down: (1) reject, refuse to accept sth (2) reduce the amount of sound, heat etc. produced by a piece of equipment

turn off: switch off

turn on: switch on

turn out: result in a particular way and have the degree of success indicated

turn over: move sth so that the top part is facing downwards

turn up: (1) arrive unexpectedly
(2) increase the amount of sound, heat etc. produced by a piece of equipment

1. Don't forget to _____ the television _____ before you go out.
 2. Guess who _____ at school today!
 3. The teacher told us to _____ the page and begin the next exercise.
 4. Thank you for your offer, but I'm afraid I'll have to
_____ it _____.
 5. It's dark, why haven't you _____ the lights yet?
 6. If I had known the cake would have _____ like this, I never would have attempted to make it.

B Choose the correct answers.

- I'm experienced _____ computer programming.
a. in b. at c. about
 - There are quite a few people who suffer _____ headaches.
a. with b. from c. by
 - I don't think I could cope _____ so much work.
a. with b. for c. about
 - Keith believes that German cars are superior _____ Japanese ones.
a. to b. from c. than
 - How did you succeed _____ finding a job so soon?
a. with b. about c. in
 - I have difficulty _____ understanding Geometry.
a. about b. in c. with
 - John is good _____ making up stories.
a. in b. with c. at
 - Jane is really good _____ painting.
a. at b. for c. with
 - The president is capable _____ cancelling the meeting.
a. for b. with c. of
 - I'm hopeless _____ sports.
a. in b. at c. with

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

WEATHER PERMITTING

The weather is an important topic of (1) _____ for the British, but in 1995 they had more to talk about than usual. In (2) _____ to other years, it was a year with very unusual weather patterns. A (3) _____ spring, the wettest ever recorded, the hottest summer and one of the coldest winters they had ever experienced.

In fact, since the (4) _____ of the 1970s, rainfall during storms has increased dramatically all over the world. As a result, (5) _____ about changing weather conditions are common. But why are we having all these changes?

Climatologists and (6) _____, agree that global warming is to blame for this. After a lot of (7) _____, though, they are not all in agreement as to how this will affect us. (8) _____ given by some climatologists say that if we don't prepare for droughts and floods, we will face problems like (9) _____. Others say that winters will be warmer, so the (10) _____ of more crops in more places will be possible. In any case, it seems that we should all be prepared to experience changes in the climate and learn to live with them.

CONVERSE

COMPARE

RAIN

BEGIN

COMPLAIN

SCIENCE

INVESTIGATE

WARN

STARVE

GROW

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

rob (v):

steal money or property from sb

steal (v):

take sth away without permission or intention of giving it back

kidnap (v):

take sb away by force and hold them prisoner in order to demand sth from their family or the government

robber (n):

person who steals from a bank, shop or vehicle using force or threats

thief (n):

person who steals from sb else

burglar (n):

person who enters a building illegally, with the intention of stealing

kidnapper (n):

criminal who kidnaps another person

investigation (n): the act of finding out the truth about an event

search (n):

attempt to find sb or sth by carefully looking for them

research (n):

the act of studying or examining sth in order to find out facts about it

1. Many banks in this area have been _____.

2. The masked men _____ the child and asked for one million dollars ransom.

3. The shop detective saw the man _____ jewellery.

4. A _____ broke into our house and stole our computer and some money we had in a drawer.

5. The _____ told the police where they were holding the woman.

6. The _____ pointed his gun at the cashier and demanded all the money.

7. The car _____ was caught while breaking into a car.

8. _____ has shown that two in three people don't lead a healthy lifestyle.

9. The _____ into the plane crash showed that it had been caused by computer failure.

10. The _____ for the missing children continued throughout the night.

24 Emphatic/Exclamatory Structures - Inversion

A. Emphatic Structures

Emphatic structures are used to emphasise a part of the sentence.

Statements

- It is/was + ... + that/who(m)**

Luke gave Peter a present for his graduation last week. →

- *It was Luke that gave Peter a present for his graduation last week.*
- *It was a present that Luke gave Peter for his graduation last week.*
- *It was Peter that Luke gave a present to for his graduation last week.*
- *It was for his graduation that Luke gave Peter a present last week.*
- *It was last week that Luke gave Peter a present for his graduation.*

- That is/was + question word + subject + verb**

That's why he was so upset.

- Question word + subject + verb + is/was**

What her secret was is something that we'll never learn.

- Subject + do/does/did + bare infinitive**, in the Present or Past Simple and Imperative.

She does eat cereal every morning.

They did travel abroad eventually.

Do come with us tonight!

Questions

- Is/Was it + ... + that/who(m)...?**

Is it your car that is parked outside?

Is it Angela that/who(m) you are going to invite?

- Question word + ever**, to express anger, admiration, concern, etc.

Whatever happened to them? They're late.

- Is/Was that + question word + subject + verb...?**

Is that why you don't want to see him again?

- Question word + is/was it that + subject + verb...?**

Why is it that you are so absent-minded?

B. Exclamatory Structures

Exclamatory structures express surprise, shock, fear, anger, admiration, etc.

Structure

Examples

What + (a/an) + (adjective) + noun

What an interesting story!

What beautiful houses! What bad behaviour!

How + adjective/adverb (+ subject + verb)

How beautiful she is! How tactfully they behave!

How + adjective + a/an + noun

How fascinating a story!

How + subject + verb

How she cooks!

...such + (a/an) + (adjective) + noun

This is such a big house!

I've never heard such nonsense!

...so + adjective + a/an + noun

It was so generous an offer!

...so + adjective/adverb

He is so polite! She speaks so calmly!

negative question

Isn't it funny! Isn't that a pity!

Here/There + verb + noun (inversion)

Here comes the Prince of Wales.

Here/There + pronoun + verb

There he goes!

You + (adjective) + noun

You (cruel) murderer! You lucky man!

A Re

1. We l

2. He v

3. Craig

4. I bou

5. Is Te

6. Charl

C. Inversion

When some words or expressions (usually with a negative or a restrictive meaning) are at the beginning of a sentence, the sentence is formed like a question (the auxiliary is placed before the subject). This is called **inversion** and is used for emphasis.

Words and expressions	Examples
Never (before), Rarely, Seldom, Barely, Scarcely...when, Hardly (ever)...when, No sooner...than	<i>Never in my life had I felt so embarrassed.</i> <i>Rarely does he use his credit card.</i> <i>No sooner had I told him the news than everybody in the village knew it!</i>
Only Not only....but also	<i>Only when you see him will you realise how much he has changed.</i> <i>Only in an emergency should you dial 999.</i> <i>Not only did I lock the door, but I also secured the windows.</i>
Expressions with not : Not (even) once, Not often, Not until, etc.	<i>Not even once did she look in this direction.</i> <i>Not until I saw him in person did I realise how tall he was.</i>
Expressions with no : On no account, Under no circumstances, By no means, At no time, In no way, Nowhere, etc.	<i>In no way is he to blame for what happened.</i> <i>Under no circumstances would he accept my proposal.</i>
Little	<i>Little did he know about the surprise that awaited him.</i>
So + adjective/adverb	<i>So bad was his behaviour that we left immediately.</i>

note

Inversion is also used in the following structures:

- after **so** and **as** to agree with affirmative statements.
Julie speaks French and so do her parents. (=Her parents do, too.)
The desserts were tasty, as were the appetizers.
- after **neither** and **nor** to agree with negative statements.
I don't like baseball. Neither does my brother. (=My brother doesn't either.)
- with **should**, **were**, **had** in conditional sentences when **if** is omitted.
Should you meet John, give him my best regards.
Had there been a telephone nearby, I would have called the police.
- in exclamatory sentences beginning with **Here/There** when the subject is a noun (not a pronoun).
*Here comes the bus! **But:** Here it comes!*

Grammar Practice

A Rewrite the sentences using the appropriate emphatic structure to emphasise the words in bold type.

1. We bought the farm **last year**.

2. He **works** sixteen hours a day.

3. Craig broke **the window**.

4. I bought the seat covers **for my new car**.

5. Is **Tom** going to buy the food?

6. Charlie sold his car to **Mike**.

7. Who took my books?

8. Is that your **briefcase** on the table?**B Complete the sentences using exclamatory structures.**

1. They are disciplined students.

Aren't _____

How _____

What _____

They _____

2. It was a pleasant surprise.

How _____

It _____

Wasn't _____

What _____

3. You are a rude person.

What _____

You are _____

How _____

You _____

4. This is terrible weather.

The _____

How _____

Isn't _____

What _____

**C Choose the correct answers.**

1. "I was having a shower when the water was cut off."

- "_____! And I still had shampoo in my hair!"
 a. So was I b. So I was c. Nor was I

2. "Jane can read and write Italian."

- "Wendy _____. And she also speaks Spanish."
 a. can too b. can so c. can't either

3. "We didn't watch the match last night."

- "We _____. "
 a. did too b. didn't either c. so did

4. "We'll be visiting Mexico this autumn."

- "_____ Tony. You could go together."
 a. Neither will b. So does c. So will

5. "I only buy recycled paper."

- "_____ Harry."
 a. So does b. Neither does c. So is

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. You should never use a lift immediately after an earthquake.
account On _____ a lift immediately after an earthquake.
2. We had never listened to such an interesting speech.
before Never _____ such an interesting speech.
3. They wouldn't reject such an offer.
means By _____ such an offer.
4. Julie had just arrived when the lights went out.
sooner No _____ the lights went out.
5. I never received good marks in Maths at school.
receive Not _____ good marks in Maths at school.
6. The waitress told me that the restaurant was about to close and I had scarcely started eating.
when Hardly _____ the waitress told me that the restaurant was about to close.
7. He can't leave the court until he has testified.
can Not until he _____ the court.
8. You mustn't interrupt me during the meeting.
no Under _____ me during the meeting.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

wash up:	wash dishes and other kitchen utensils
watch out:	be careful
wear out:	become thin, weak or unsuitable for further use
to be worn out:	to be tired or bored of sth or sb
work out:	(1) find a solution to a problem (2) take part in physical exercise

1. You must always _____ for jellyfish when you swim there.
2. Could you explain this exercise to me? I just can't _____ the answer.
3. Jack, it's your turn to _____ tonight.
4. I'm always _____ when I get home from work.
5. This is the second pair of shoes you've _____ this month.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

to one's amazement/ surprise:	surprised, usually by sth unexpected
under arrest:	held by the police (as a suspect for a crime)
under control:	controlled
under the impression:	believing that this is the case
under pressure:	pressured
without (a) doubt:	definitely true, undoubtedly
without delay:	immediately, as soon as possible
without fail/success:	successfully/ unsuccessfully
without warning:	unexpectedly, without letting sb know in advance

1. _____, that's the best book I've ever read.
2. For some reason, Louise was _____ that we were going to a Chinese restaurant.
3. Some friends arrived _____ after midnight.
4. _____, I passed the test. I thought that I had failed it.
5. We participated in the competition, however _____ any _____.
6. The firemen quickly got the fire _____.
7. Send this package off _____. It must get there today.
8. Jack is always _____ before he goes on holiday. He wants to get things finished before he leaves.
9. The policeman told the thief that he was _____.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

AND THEY'RE STILL STANDING...

It is indeed quite an (1) _____ that many ancient buildings are still standing, while a lot of modern buildings collapse with the slightest (2) _____ of the earth. This seems (3) _____, considering the advances in technology. As a result, engineers receive a lot of (4) _____, especially when lives are lost. One of the reasons why ancient buildings still stand is because they are conservative structures. The pyramids are a good example. Their huge (5) _____ is spread over a wide area, so they cannot topple over.

Today, engineers want to create new designs which have never been tested before, so they rely on computers for safety predictions. However, these may be (6) _____ or misleading and could cause the (7) _____ of the building in the future. (8) _____ of disasters is something that engineers should pay the upmost (9) _____ to. This is sometimes difficult, as engineers are constantly being forced to keep costs down. (10) _____ cannot always be achieved, but safety should be their main priority.

ACHIEVE
MOVE
ACCEPT
CRITICISE

WEIGH
CORRECT
DESTROY
PREVENT
ATTEND
PERFECT

D Complete using the words given.

sunrise (n): when the sun first appears in the sky in the morning

sunset (n): when the sun disappears from the sky in the evening

sunshine (n): light and heat coming from the sun

sunlight (n): light coming from the sun during the day

shade (n): area protected from bright sunlight

shadow (n): dark shape on a surface caused by sth standing between the light and the surface

season (n): one of the four main periods - each with typical weather conditions - into which a year is divided

climate (n): general weather conditions that characterise a place

weather (n): conditions of the atmosphere in one area at a particular time

- I enjoy sitting in the _____ at outdoor cafés in spring.
- I love big windows as they let in a lot of _____.
- The length of a _____ depends on the time of day.
- People gather here in the evening to watch the _____.
- We woke up very early in the morning to watch the _____.
- In summer, it's advisable to sit in the _____.
- The _____ in Greece is warm and dry.
- The _____ forecast for tomorrow is fine and sunny.
- My favourite _____ is spring when flowers bloom.

A

- _____
- Tl _____
- _____
- Ja _____
- W _____
- _____
- _____
- A _____
- Tl _____
- "I _____"
- Ca _____
- It _____
- No _____
- I _____
- No _____

Revision | 06

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. _____ the room, I noticed it had been renovated.
 - Entering
 - Entered
 - Having been entered
 - Having entering
2. The weather was warm; _____, he took some jumpers with him as well.
 - on the other hand
 - therefore
 - nevertheless
 - otherwise
3. _____ buying paint, I bought some paintbrushes.
 - In addition to
 - Furthermore
 - As well
 - What is more
4. Jack won't come to the meeting and _____.
 - Bob won't too
 - neither will Bob
 - nor won't Bob
 - Bob won't neither
5. _____ by a snake, I was rushed to hospital.
 - Bitten
 - Having bitten
 - Biting
 - Been bitten
6. What _____ something nobody knows.
 - are his plans is
 - his plans are is
 - are his plans that is
 - his plans are it is
7. _____ the facts, she must be guilty.
 - In conclusion
 - Indeed
 - Considering
 - In my opinion
8. At no time _____ the house.
 - left they
 - did they leave
 - they left
 - they did leave
9. The house needs painting, _____ the bedrooms.
 - according to
 - with regard
 - in particular
 - in conclusion
10. "I don't like football".

"_____".

 - Neither my sister does
 - Neither does my sister
 - My sister doesn't neither
 - Nor doesn't my sister
11. Cars _____ in Japan are very reliable.
 - having manufactured
 - have been manufactured
 - manufacturing
 - manufactured
12. It is the most _____ lecture I've ever attended.
 - bored
 - bore
 - boring
 - boredom
13. Not only _____ the report, but I also e-mailed it.
 - didn't I type
 - I did type
 - did I typed
 - did I type
14. I don't want to go; _____, I'm not coming with you.
 - in other words
 - in the other words
 - last but not least
 - strangely enough
15. No sooner had the guests left _____ she started tidying up.
 - when
 - than
 - before
 - while

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Alex, you're interested in physics, aren't you?

find Alex, _____, don't you?

2. In fact, both Mark and Liam were against the idea.

nor In fact, _____ liked the idea.

3. It was such a cold night last night!

so It _____ last night!

4. Did Kevin give you those flowers?

gave Was _____ those flowers?

5. Mary, who didn't want to be late, left the house an hour earlier.

wanting Mary, _____, left the house an hour earlier.

6. She had just left when her mother called.

sooner No _____ her mother called.

7. Actually, I drank some coffee last night and I couldn't go to sleep until three in the morning.

drunk Actually, _____ some coffee last night, I couldn't go to sleep until three in the morning.

8. Both Neil and Brian like spaghetti, as far as I know.

so Neil likes spaghetti and _____, as far as I know.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. You must be crazy. You can't turn _____ an offer like that.

- a. down b. back c. out d. over

2. Could you help me with my Maths? I'm having a lot of difficulty _____ solving these problems.

- a. at b. in c. for d. on

3. What do you mean you've _____ out your shoes? You only bought them last month.

- a. wiped b. watched c. worked d. worn

4. The new manager is taking _____ next month.

- a. up b. over c. on d. off

5. He attempted to _____ the painting from the gallery but he was caught.

- a. rob b. steal c. thief d. kidnap

6. The _____ took the child and called his parents to demand a ransom.

- a. kidnapper b. robber c. thief d. burglar

7. I gave the cat the bits of _____ that were left over.

- a. dish b. course c. food d. meal

8. Recent _____ has shown that margarine is healthier than butter.

- a. investigation b. research c. discover d. search

9. When I have a sore throat, I find it hard to _____.

- a. chew b. swallow c. sip d. gulp

10. I like sitting on the beach watching the _____ in the evenings.

- a. sunshine b. sunrise c. sunlight d. sunset

11. My favourite _____ is summer because I love the sea and sun.

- a. climate b. place c. season d. weather

12. 1

13. 1

14. C

15. T

B C

1. Jc

2. A

go

3. Th

4. At

5. Th

6. Th

7. Sv

8. Se

C Cr

(1) _

(3) _

good

mum,

a very

(6) _

get to

1. a. A

b. D

c. H

d. S

2. a. ta

b. ta

c. tal

d. tal

3. a. Li

b. Su

c. Fo

d. Es

12. When he retired, he _____ gardening.
a. tried on b. took after c. took up d. turned up

13. I'd like to _____ a flight to London.
a. reserve b. book c. close d. keep

14. Cindy is good _____ languages. She speaks French, German and Italian.
a. with b. in c. for d. at

15. They accused me _____ lying.
a. of b. with c. off d. for

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| 1. John doesn't accept _____ easily. | CRITICISE |
| 2. According to recent _____ research, a glass of milk every day is good for you. | SCIENCE |
| 3. The _____ will swim in the shallow pool. | BEGIN |
| 4. After the teacher's _____, I rewrote the composition. | CORRECT |
| 5. The conditions are _____. I'll sign the contract. | ACCEPT |
| 6. The experiment was a complete _____. | FAIL |
| 7. Swimming across the Channel is a great _____. | ACHIEVE |
| 8. Select whatever you like. It's your _____. | CHOOSE |

C Choose the correct answers.

(1) _____ we are very close, my sister and I are so different! I think she (2) _____ my mother. (3) _____, they both love cooking. They cook together all the time, and I must say, they make some pretty good meals. I, (4) _____, am a horrible cook. I can't even cook spaghetti! My sister is also very neat, like my mum, (5) _____ I'm very messy. No matter how hard I try, I can't seem to be as organised as her. Also, she is a very strong character and stands up for her beliefs. I'm quite shy and don't really voice my opinion that often. (6) _____ seeing us side by side, anyone would agree that we resemble each other. (7) _____, once you get to know us, you'll begin to wonder how it is we (8) _____ so different!

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 1. a. Although
b. Despite
c. However
d. Since | 4. a. likewise
b. on the other hand
c. actually
d. indeed | 7. a. However
b. Furthermore
c. Otherwise
d. Likewise |
| 2. a. takes off
b. takes after
c. takes over
d. takes up | 5. a. while
b. so
c. even though
d. whatever | 8. a. turned out
b. turned on
c. turned off
d. turned in |
| 3. a. Like
b. Such as
c. For instance
d. Especially | 6. a. Before
b. Though
c. While
d. After | |

Final FCE Test

PART 1

For questions 1-12, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each gap. Mark your answers on the separate answer sheet.

SUMMER HOLIDAYS DON'T MEAN RELAXATION

Holidays, holidays, holidays! That's all you hear before summer begins. Everyone is busy planning and booking ahead. Many (1) _____ to their break for months and are in a (2) _____ of excitement for weeks before they leave. People have their cars serviced and go shopping to buy (3) _____ clothes.

I suppose it's logical, I (4) _____ after a whole year of work, people want to relax and (5) _____ themselves of some stress. However, I have my (6) _____ about summer holidays. It's the time when people vacate the city and go to summer resorts (7) _____ find that everyone else has done the same thing. Places are very crowded. You go to restaurants where you have to (8) _____ to be served, the room you had booked is next to the beach and (9) _____ is expensive.

(10) _____ you finally get back, you feel so tired that you need another holiday to get (11) _____ the one you just had. I sometimes wonder if going on holiday is worth all that preparation and (12) _____.

ANSWER SHEET

1 A look forward	B expect	C anticipate	D wait	1 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
2 A situation	B circumstance	C state	D position	2 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
3 A correct	B relevant	C right	D appropriate	3 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
4 A say	B mean	C express	D remark	4 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
5 A relieve	B take off	C remove	D shake off	5 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
6 A uncertainties	B hesitations	C dilemmas	D doubts	6 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
7 A only to	B such as	C so that	D even though	7 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
8 A insist on	B call for	C demand	D command	8 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
9 A whole	B everything	C entire	D total	9 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
10 A Until	B While	C As	D When	10 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
11 A over	B by	C off	D out of	11 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D
12 A annoyance	B problem	C inconvenience	D disturbance	12 <input type="checkbox"/> A <input type="checkbox"/> B <input type="checkbox"/> C <input type="checkbox"/> D

PART 2

For questions 13-24, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. Write your answers in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

THE LIFE CYCLE OF THE EMPEROR PENGUIN

The Emperor Penguin is the largest penguin, standing over one metre tall. Its life cycle is something extraordinary and rather different (13) _____ that of other animals.

The Antarctic summer (Dec-Feb) is the time when the Emperor Penguins have a “holiday” and they feed in the sea. During the month of March, they set off for their long journey south to the place where they breed and lay their eggs. As the long, dark winter arrives, each female lays one egg directly on the ice. The male immediately lifts the egg off the ice onto his feet. He (14) _____ pushes it under his stomach for warmth.

The female has completed her task and can now return to the sea to feed, leaving the male with the egg. For over two months, (15) _____ the males huddle together (16) _____ keep warm. (17) _____ other animal except for the penguin can survive in temperatures of -70°C.

The chick will hatch during July. That's (18) _____ the female returns bringing food for her chick. By that time the male penguin will have lost about half his body weight, because he won't have eaten (19) _____ for five months. As (20) _____ as the female returns, the male leaves in search of food.

For the next six months, both parents take turns looking (21) _____ the chick. (22) _____ the beginning of the following summer, the (23) _____ family goes to the sea. The adults can at last have a two-month break before (24) _____ cycle begins again.

ANSWER SHEET

DO NOT
WRITE HERE

13		13
14		14
15		15
16		16
17		17
18		18
19		19
20		20
21		21
22		22
23		23
24		24

PART 3

For questions 25-34, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. Write your answers in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

MAGAZINES

Magazines are big business. A large (25) _____ of the population buy them (26) _____. In fact, some people even get their magazines brought to their home by a (27) _____ service. For others, magazines are an (28) _____ and they even collect them.

But magazines are not to my (29) _____. They have ads promising a (30) _____ appearance with the use of certain products. They also print (31) _____ and unreliable information. Apart from that, they fill their pages with photos of (32) _____ clothes. What a waste of money!

I admit that I'll (33) _____ buy one when going on a trip, but short novels or comics are always (34) _____, as far as I'm concerned.

MAJOR**REGULAR****DELIVER****OBSESS****LIKE****DESIRE****ACCURATE****FASHION****OCCASION****PREFER****ANSWER SHEET**DO NOT
WRITE HERE25 2526 2627 2728 2829 2930 3031 3132 3233 3334 34

PART 4

For questions 35-42, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Write the missing words in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

35. "Did you go to the swimming pool yesterday?"

Macey asked me,

whether

Macey asked _____ to the swimming pool the previous day.

ANSWER SHEETDO NOT
WRITE HERE

35

35

0

1

2

36. He didn't say anything although he was dissatisfied with the service at the hotel.

spite

He didn't say anything _____ with the service at the hotel.

36

36

0

1

2

37. I can't stand people interrupting me when I'm studying.

rather

I'd _____ me when I'm studying.

37

37

0

1

2

38. We must return the books to the library by Wednesday.

taken

The books _____ to the library by Wednesday.

38

38

0

1

2

39. The house will need painting before we move in.

have

We'll need _____ before we move in.

39

39

0

1

2

40. Mike, I'd like to know the name of the hotel you stayed at.

which

Mike, _____ at?

40

40

0

1

2

41. Look, if she goes to the shopping centre by bus, she'll be there in ten minutes.

take

Look, _____ ten minutes to go to the shopping centre by bus.

41

41

0

1

2

42. They didn't let us feed the animals at the zoo.

allowed

We _____ the animals at the zoo.

42

42

0

1

2

Final ECCE Test

Grammar

1. All applications for the job must _____ in by the end of the week.
- send
 - have sent
 - be sent
 - have been sent
2. Amy finally got _____ her money problems.
- out of
 - around
 - over
 - away
3. The woman _____ daughter was kidnapped lives next to me.
- who
 - who's
 - whom
 - whose
4. "Are you still going on a trip at the weekend?"
"Yes, _____ something else comes up."
- unless
 - in case
 - as long as
 - supposing
5. He is really interested _____ studying art.
- of
 - for
 - about
 - in
6. Martha, I never knew you were _____ cook!
- a such good
 - such a good
 - so good
 - a so good
7. Do you mind walking me _____ my car?
- to
 - in
 - at
 - until
8. Dad, it's time you _____ that I'm not a little boy anymore.
- be realising
 - are realising
 - realised
 - will realise
9. "I'd really like to travel to Africa one day."
"You _____ that for years. Why don't you just do it?"
- are saying
 - were saying
 - say
 - have been saying
10. She wondered why _____.
- was I crying
 - I am crying
 - I was crying
 - am I crying
11. How long _____ Spanish?
- are you learning
 - have you been learning
 - do you learn
 - have you learned
12. "Is this restaurant always so busy?"
"No. Rarely _____ so busy."
- this place being
 - is this place
 - this place is
 - does this place
13. Mike, it's March 1st —the rent is _____ today.
- due until
 - due for
 - due to
 - due
14. The new shopping centre is _____ Northern Ave.
- at
 - on
 - under
 - of

15. My parents are quite strict-they never let me _____ out late.
 a. stay
 b. to stay
 c. staying
 d. having stayed
16. "Where's Grandma?"
 "She's in the garden _____ the plants."
 a. watering
 b. to watering
 c. to water
 d. for watering
17. John and Amy have a beautiful _____ daughter.
 a. two-years-old
 b. two-year-olds
 c. two-year-old
 d. two-years-olds
18. The hotel is _____ close by, but quite cheap, too.
 a. in addition
 b. as well as
 c. not only
 d. also
19. I don't think there's _____ point in apologising now.
 a. little
 b. such
 c. very
 d. any
20. Even though they live nearby, I _____ visit them.
 a. not ever
 b. hardly ever
 c. hardly never
 d. had never
21. It was _____ book that I couldn't put it down.
 a. such interesting
 b. so interesting
 c. such an interesting
 d. so interesting a
22. I'm really tired _____ you talking down to me.
 a. of
 b. in
 c. at
 d. for
23. "Did you paint the house by yourself?"
 "No, I _____ professionally."
 a. have done it
 b. had done it
 c. had it done
 d. got done
24. _____ can use the pool. You don't have to be a member.
 a. Anyone
 b. Every
 c. Someone
 d. Each one
25. _____ who told me about the accident.
 a. Alice
 b. Alice was
 c. She was Alice
 d. It was Alice
26. Steve, I wish you _____ drive like a crazy person!
 a. couldn't
 b. wouldn't
 c. could
 d. mustn't
27. Robert _____ be in his room. He left an hour ago.
 a. mustn't
 b. can't
 c. shouldn't
 d. might not
28. I don't really know _____ that machine.
 a. to operate
 b. operating
 c. how is operating
 d. how to operate
29. _____ you follow the directions, you won't have any problem.
 a. As soon as
 b. As much as
 c. As long as
 d. As though

Final ECCE Test

30. _____ not an easy language to learn.
- The Japanese
 - The Japanese is
 - Japanese are
 - Japanese is
31. Why don't you pay attention! You _____ things up!
- constantly messed
 - are constantly messing
 - have constantly messed
 - constantly messing
32. Maria decided to have her hair _____.
- dye
 - dyed
 - dying
 - to dye
33. Hurry up! The plane _____ in one hour!
- leaves
 - had left
 - would have left
 - has left
34. Let's go out tonight, _____?
- aren't we
 - don't we
 - won't we
 - shall we
35. Twenty minutes of exercise a day _____ stay in shape.
- is all you need to
 - that is need for
 - which is in need of
 - of which is needed to
36. My mother always seems _____ about my health.
- concerned
 - contained
 - involved
 - caring
37. This knife is too _____ for me to cut my steak.
- broad
 - sharp
 - round
 - blunt
38. _____ exams is always very stressful for me.
- Giving
 - Taking
 - Making
 - Setting
39. It's a police officer's job to _____ the law.
- ban
 - enforce
 - keep
 - obey
40. It's not in my best _____ to listen to everything he says.
- advice
 - plan
 - interest
 - wish
41. He took a _____ breath before he dove into the water.
- wide
 - strong
 - large
 - deep
42. The spaghetti you made looks _____ delicious!
- fully
 - nicely
 - absolutely
 - interestingly
43. He was disqualified and unable to _____ in the race.
- oppose
 - complete
 - compete
 - enter

44.

45.

46.

47.

48.

49.

50.

44. Josh can't _____ be serious about moving to Africa.
- definitely
 - fairly
 - simply
 - possibly
45. There were several kidnapping _____ reported in the neighborhood.
- events
 - incidents
 - tragedies
 - news
46. I need you to _____ some cheese for the macaroni, please.
- chop
 - grate
 - boil
 - peel
47. Can you please keep an _____ on my son for a second?
- eye
 - arm
 - alarm
 - ear
48. An aspirin will definitely help _____ your headache.
- fight
 - relax
 - relieve
 - recover
49. I'm starting to feel like everyone is taking me for _____.
- granted
 - sure
 - certain
 - definite
50. Alice _____ to have met the president in person.
- regards
 - claims
 - says
 - considers
51. She _____ that I go shopping with her.
- assisted
 - persisted
 - insisted
 - resisted
52. I wasn't able to _____ that lecture on Sunday.
- enroll
 - attend
 - advise
 - accept
53. The crime _____ has risen drastically over the past few years.
- scene
 - rate
 - measure
 - percent
54. I knew my sister was in big _____ from the way my mom looked at her.
- problem
 - difficulty
 - trouble
 - shock
55. Can you please give me a(n) _____ with my shopping bags?
- lift
 - ride
 - hand
 - arm
56. I can't _____ what it must be like to be so poor.
- imagine
 - expect
 - remember
 - think
57. Many different kinds of food sold today have _____ flavouring added to them.
- false
 - wrong
 - artificial
 - false

58. Anne _____ Jane had invited her to her house last night.
 a. told
 b. wished
 c. offered
 d. wanted
59. The teacher told the students to _____ their hands before speaking.
 a. stretch
 b. apply
 c. raise
 d. give
60. He had changed so much, I _____ recognised him.
 a. never
 b. barely
 c. obviously
 d. virtually
61. I'm not really that _____ with the new software program.
 a. aware
 b. familiar
 c. capable
 d. able
62. I'm afraid the wedding will be _____ until further notice.
 a. postponed
 b. cancelled
 c. held
 d. given
63. This room is so _____. Can we open a window?
 a. dirty
 b. chilly
 c. stuffy
 d. misty
64. In an effort to _____ the ice, she tried telling a joke.
 a. crack
 b. break
 c. melt
 d. crush
65. His table _____ are horrible! He eats like a pig!
 a. behaviours
 b. moods
 c. manners
 d. actions
66. The reporter told the football player that the interview was off the _____.
 a. plan
 b. file
 c. record
 d. agenda
67. Her glasses broke when she _____ them on the floor.
 a. dropped
 b. spilled
 c. collapsed
 d. removed
68. I asked my father if he could give me a _____ to the train station.
 a. drive
 b. travel
 c. pick
 d. lift
69. She gave a _____ excuse for being late to work.
 a. risky
 b. invalid
 c. useless
 d. lousy
70. Who's in _____ of this project?
 a. responsibility
 b. charge
 c. head
 d. direction
71. He needs a _____ break before he plays again.
 a. full
 b. nicely
72. The comment you made looks _____.
 a. fully
 b. nicely
73. He was disqualified and unable to _____.
 a. compete
 b. complete
 c. compete
 d. enter

Dictionary

A

abbreviation (n): a shortened word or phrase

abnormal (adj): not normal

abolish (v): formally put an end to sth

absent-minded (adj): forgetful, not paying proper attention to sth

accommodation (n): buildings or rooms where people stay

accompany (v): go somewhere with sb

accomplish (v): succeed in doing sth

accordingly (adv): in agreement with sth, therefore

accounts (n): detailed records of all the money received or spent

accountant (n): sb whose job is to keep financial records

accumulate (v): gather together in an increasing quantity, collect

accurate (adj): precise, correct to a very detailed level

accustomed to sth (adj): used to sth

ache (n): physical pain or discomfort caused by injury or illness

achieve (v): succeed in doing sth

acknowledge (v): accept or admit that sth exists or is true

acquire (v): get, gain possession of sth

actually (adv): in fact

adaptable (adj): adjustable, changeable

additive (n): a substance added to food for colouring, flavouring or to make it last longer

adequate (adj): enough, sufficient

admiration (n): feeling of liking and respect for sb or sth

adopt (v): start having a new attitude or plan

ads (n): advertisements

advance (n): progress, development

advisable (adj): sensible, correct

affect (v): influence, cause sb or sth to change in some way

affection (n): liking or being fond of someone

allergic reaction (n): becoming ill or getting a rash when you eat, smell or touch sth

alternative (adj): other

alternative (n): possibility of choice between two things

amateur (n): sb who does sth as a hobby, not as a job

amazement (n): surprise, astonishment

ambition (n): wanting very much to do or achieve sth

amusement (n): sth you find pleasant or funny (game, pastime etc.)

animal rights (n): the belief that animals should not be exploited or abused by

humans

anniversary (n): the date on which sth special happened in some previous year

annual (adj): once a year

anthem (n): a formal song or religious hymn written for a special occasion

anticipate (v): await sth, be prepared for sth to happen

apparently (adv): clearly, obviously

appetiser (n): food served at the beginning of a meal, starter

appetite (n): desire to eat

applaud (v): clap your hands to show approval

approach (v): (1) get closer to sb/sth (2) deal with a task or problem

approval (n): approving of sth, believing that it is acceptable

approve (v): like, admire sb or sth

approximately (adv): almost, nearly, roughly

arch (n): a curved line

arrangement (n): plan, preparation for sth

arrow (n): a long thin weapon which is sharp and pointed at the end

artistic (adj): good at drawing, painting etc.

ash (n): what is left after sth has burnt

ashtray (n): a small dish for cigarette ashes

assure (v): make sb certain that sth will happen

astonish (v): surprise very much

attack (v): try to hurt or damage sb or sth using violence

attempt (v): try, make an effort to do sth

attendance (n): being present or regularly going to a place

attitude (n): point of view, approach, opinion, behaviour

autobiography (n): an account of your life, which you write yourself

available (adj): that can be found, obtained or used

await (v): wait for sth, expect sth

award (n): a prize

aware (adj): knowing sth

B

balanced (adj): having all its different parts in correct proportions

ban (v): state officially that sth must not be done, shown or used

barely (adv): hardly, only just, scarcely

barn (n): a building on a farm where crops or animal food are kept

basement (n): a floor of a building built below ground level

bazaar (n): sale organised to raise

money for charity

beforehand (adj): in advance, earlier than sth else

bin (n): a container for putting rubbish in

binding (n): anything that wraps around sth

birthmark (n): a mark on your body that you have since you were born

bit (n): small piece

blame (v): believe that sb or sth is responsible for sth bad

bleach (n): a chemical used for whitening clothes and killing germs

bleed (v): lose blood as a result of injury or illness

blood pressure (n): the force at which blood flows around your body

bloom (v): when the flower bud opens

board (n): a group of people managing a company or organisation

bolt (n): flash of lightning seen as a white line in the sky

bound (adj): tied up securely

bravery (n): brave behaviour, being brave

break out (phr v): begin suddenly (war, fire, etc.)

breakthrough (n): significant development or progress

breath (n): the air you take into and let out of your lungs when you breathe

breathalyser (n): a bag or electronic device used by the police to test whether a driver has drunk too much alcohol

breed (v): when animals reproduce

bright (adj): strong and noticeable, not dark

brilliant (adj): very smart, intelligent

broadcast (v): transmit on radio or television

broccoli (n): a type of vegetable, green in colour

bump into (phr v): meet or come across by chance

burden (n): causing you a lot of difficulty or worry

by means of (pp): by way of

by nature (pp): having a characteristic or quality as part of your character

C

calcium (n): a white mineral found in bones and teeth

calmly (adv): quietly, peacefully

campaign (n): planned set of activities carried out in order to achieve an aim

cancel (v): prevent sth arranged from happening

candidate (n): a person considered for a position or taking an examination

capsule (n): a small container with a drug or other substance inside it, used for medical or scientific purposes

cardboard (n): thick, stiff paper used for making boxes

chick (n): a baby bird

conventional (adj): ordinary, normal

cardigan (n): a woollen jumper which is open in the front and can be fastened with buttons

carving (n): an object which has been cut out of wood, stone, etc.

cauliflower (n): a type of vegetable, white in colour

ceremony (n): a formal event, usually religious

chain (n): rings (usually of metal) linked together in a line

chairman (n): a person in charge of a committee or organisation

challenge (v): invite sb to fight or compete with you in some way

challenging (adj): requiring great effort and determination

charge (v): ask sb to pay money for sth that they have bought or for a service

charity (n): an organisation which raises money to help people

charm (n): sth believed to have magic powers

chase (v): to run after sb in order to catch them

cheer up (phr v): become more cheerful

chickenpox (n): a disease that gives you high temperature and red itchy spots

circumstance (n): situation, condition

city-state (n): ancient state consisting of a city and smaller towns dependent on it

claim (v): say that sth is true

clarify (v): make sth easier to understand

clink (v): make a light sharp ringing sound

coach (n): trainer

collapse (v): fall down suddenly

colloquial (adj): informal speech

combination (n): a mixture of things or qualities

combine (v): join together, blend, mix

comforting (adj): making you feel less worried or unhappy

command (n): order

comment (v): express your opinion about sth or give an explanation for it

commentary (n): a description of an event broadcast on radio or television while the event is taking place

commercial (adj): related to buying or selling goods

committee (n): a group of people who meet to make decisions for the organisation they represent

community (n): all the people living in an area

compete (v): take part in a game, contest

or fight

complete (adj): containing all the parts sth should contain

complexion (n): the colour and general condition of a person's skin

complicated (adj): not simple

compulsive (adj): obsessive, not able to stop doing sth wrong or harmful

concentrate (v): focus your attention on sth, consider sth closely

concern (n): worrying about a situation

conclude (v): end sth, draw a conclusion about it

conference (n): a meeting at which formal discussions take place

confide (v): trust sb and tell them your secrets

confirmation (n): proof, knowing that sth is definite

conflict (n): serious disagreement or argument about sth important

conformist (adj): behaving or thinking like everybody else

confront (v): deal with sth, face

conscious (adj): awake, alert, aware of sth

consciousness (n): being awake or alert

conservative (adj): not willing to accept change

constantly (adv): always, continually

construction (n): building of houses, factories, roads etc.

consult (v): ask for specialised advice

consume (v): eat, drink or use up sth

consumer (n): a person who buys things or uses services

contact (v): get in touch with sb

container (n): anything that can be used for putting things into it (e.g. a box)

content (adj): fairly happy or satisfied

content(s) (n): anything that is inside of sth else

contract (n): legal agreement, usually involving money

contrast (n): clear difference between two or more things

contribution (n): a sum of money you give in order to help pay for sth

convenient (adj): easy, useful for a particular purpose

converse (v): talk to someone

convince (v): persuade, make sb believe sth

co-ordination (n): organising the activities of groups so that they work together efficiently

corporation (n): large business or company

cosmetics (n): substances (e.g. lipstick, powder) which people use on their face or body in order to look more attractive

cottage (n): a house in the country

create (v): invent, design or make sth new

credit card (n): a card which allows you

to buy goods on credit

crisps (n): baked slices of potato sold in packets

criterion (n): a standard by which sth can be judged

criticise (v): express disapproval of sth or say what is wrong with it

crooked (adj): bent, twisted

crops (n): plants (e.g. wheat, potatoes) grown in large quantities

crowning (n): placing a crown on one's head

cube (n): an object with six square surfaces which are all the same size

culture (n): civilisation, customs, life-style

custard tart: a sweet dessert

D

dare (v): have enough courage to do sth

dart (n): a small narrow object with a sharp point which can be thrown or shot

deal with (phr. v): solve a problem or make a decision about a situation

deceive (v): make sb believe sth that is not true in order to gain sth yourself

declare (v): (1) state officially (2) say what goods you have bought from abroad in order to pay the right tax

deduction (n): drawing a conclusion about sth

defeat (v): beat your opponent in a battle, game or contest

deficiency (n): lack, shortage, not having enough of sth

dehydrated (adj): when the body doesn't have enough water

delivery (n): carrying sth to a destination

demolish (v): destroy a building completely

demonstration (n): a march or gathering in which people take part in order to show their opposition to or support for sth

deodoriser (n): sth that can hide or remove unpleasant smells

depend on (v): rely on

deprive (v): prevent sb from having or enjoying sth

depth (n): how deep sth is (downwards, backwards, or inwards)

desperate (adj): being in such a bad situation that you would try anything to change it

detached house (n): not joined to any other house

determination (n): not willing to change your mind about sth you have decided to do

devastated (adj): shocked and very upset by sth

device (n): a piece of machinery or a special tool used for a particular purpose

diabetic (n): a person who suffers from diabetes (having too much sugar in their

E
ear
mat
pro
ear
usu
eat
ani
ece
opin
peo
econ
effe
elec
pers
posi
eleg
grac
elim
get

- blood** (n): liquid in the body containing oxygen and nutrients
- dialect** (n): a form of a language spoken in a particular area
- dictate** (v): say or read sth aloud, so that others can write it down
- digest** (v): when the body processes the food we eat
- digital** (adj): systems recording or transmitting information in the form of thousands of very small signals
- dim** (adj): not bright, not easy to see
- dim** (v): make or become less bright
- dirt** (n): dust, mud or stain on sth
- disapprove of sth** (v): not like, not agree with or approve of sth
- disaster** (n): a terrible accident or misfortune
- discipline** (n): obeying laws or rules, working in a controlled way
- disconnected** (adj): not connected or joined, cut off
- discovery** (n): learning sth that was not known before
- disheartening** (adj): disappointing
- dissatisfaction** (n): not being satisfied or pleased with sth
- distant** (adj): far away in space or time
- distract** (v): draw sb's attention away from sth
- distress** (n): a state of extreme suffering or pain
- distribute** (v): hand out or deliver things to a number of people
- downwards** (adv): towards the ground or a lower level
- drain** (v): remove any liquid from food, especially after it has been cooked
- drawback** (n): disadvantage
- drought** (n): long period of time during which no rain falls
- drown** (v): die in water due to lack of oxygen
- E**
- earplugs** (n): small pieces of soft material which are put into your ear to protect you from noise or water
- earthquake** (n): shaking of the ground, usually causing destruction
- eating grounds** (n): fields where animals can feed
- eccentric** (adj): sb whose habits or opinions are different from those of most people
- economise** (v): save up
- effective** (adj): working well and producing the desired results
- effort** (n): trying hard to do sth
- election** (n): voting in order to choose a person or group of people for an official position
- elegant** (adj): stylish in appearance and graceful in movement
- eliminate** (v): remove sth completely, get rid of
- emblem** (n): a design that has been chosen as a symbol of a country or organisation
- embroider** (v): sew a decorative design on a piece of cloth
- emergency** (n): an unexpected difficult or dangerous situation demanding immediate action
- emotion** (n): a person's feelings
- emperor** (n): a man who rules an empire
- enable** (v): make it possible for sb to do sth
- enchanting** (adj): causing feelings of delight or pleasure
- encounter** (v): come across, meet, experience
- engaged** (telephone line) (adj): busy, so that you cannot speak to the person you are trying to call
- engagement** (n): an arrangement that sb has made to do sth
- enthuse** (v): make sb feel excited or enthusiastic
- entire** (adj): whole, complete
- equip** (v): give sb or sth the tools or the skill they need for a particular purpose
- erode** (v): crack and break, becoming gradually destroyed
- escapologist** (n): sb who entertains audiences by escaping from difficult situations
- essay** (n): composition
- establish** (v): set up sth
- evacuate** (v): move people out of a place when in danger
- eventually** (adv): finally, in the end, after all
- evidence** (n): proof, anything that causes you to believe that sth is true
- excessive** (adj): more than necessary
- execution** (v): killing sb as a punishment for a serious crime
- exhausted** (v): tired either physically or mentally
- expedition** (n): an organised journey made for a specific purpose (e.g. exploration)
- extinction** (n): the death of all the remaining living members of a species
- extinguish** (v): put out a fire
- extraordinary** (adj): special, unusual
- extreme** (adj): great, maximum, very intense
- eye shadow** (n): make-up for the eyes
- eyelash** (n): hair growing on the upper and lower eyelids
- eyesight** (n): the ability to see
- eyewitness** (n): sb who was present at an event and can describe what happened
- F**
- fabric** (n): cloth, material
- fade** (v): gradually become unnoticed or unimportant
- failure** (n): (1) lack of success in sth (2) when sth goes wrong or stops working
- fairness** (n): being reasonable, right and just
- familiarise** (v): learn about sth and start to understand it
- fancy** (v): want to have or to do sth
- fascinated** (adj): charmed, finding sth very interesting and attractive
- feeder** (n): a container filled with food for birds or animals
- fellow** (n): colleague, person with whom you have sth in common
- fence** (n): a wooden or metal barrier between two places
- filthy** (adj): very dirty
- financial** (adj): related to or involving money
- fire escape** (n): emergency exit from a building
- fireproof** (adj): sth that won't catch fire
- firewood** (n): wood cut into pieces so that it can be burned on a fire
- firmly** (adv): strongly
- first-aid kit** (n): a box containing anything that can be used in medical emergencies
- fit** (v): install
- fix** (v): repair, mend
- flavour** (n): the taste of a food or drink
- flee** (v): escape, run away from sb or sth
- flight attendant** (n): member of the crew of an aeroplane, whose job is to look after the passengers
- float** (v): lie above or just below the surface of a liquid
- flood** (n): an overflow of water, usually due to heavy rains
- floorboards** (n): pieces of timber used to cover floors
- floss** (n): soft, very thin pieces of thread used for cleaning between the teeth
- fluent** (adj): speaking a language easily and correctly
- flute** (n): a musical instrument
- footstep** (n): the sound of sb walking each time their foot touches the ground
- foreman** (n): an experienced person who supervises other workers
- foundation** (n): an organisation set up for a particular purpose
- founder** (n): the person who started an institution or organisation
- frame** (n): a structure that gives shape and support to sth
- frustrate** (v): upset, make sb angry
- full-length** (adj): having the complete length
- function** (v): work, operate
- fund** (n): amount of money collected or saved for a particular purpose
- furthermore** (adv): moreover, additionally
- fussy** (adj): very concerned with unimportant details

G

garbage (n): rubbish, especially waste from a kitchen
garlic (n): small round white bulb of a plant like an onion, with a very strong taste and smell
gather (v): come together in a group
generate (v): cause sth to begin and develop
genuine (adj): original, authentic, real
global (adj): sth that happens in all parts of the world
glove (n): piece of clothing which covers your hands and wrists
go off (phr v): (1) make a sudden loud noise (2) become stale, sour or rotten (food, drink, etc.)
gold-tipped (adj): the pointed end of sth which is covered in gold
goose (n): a large bird like a duck
gossip (n): informal conversation, often about other people's private affairs
goulash (n): a traditional Hungarian dish
gradual (adj): occurring in small stages over a long period of time
graduate (n): sb who has been awarded a degree at university or college
grotesque (adj): unnatural, unpleasant or out of proportion
guarantee (v): make certain sth will happen
guidance (n): help and advice, especially sb older or more experienced than you
guilty (adj): unhappy because you have done or think you have done sth wrong or bad
gums (n): firm pink flesh inside the mouth, out of which the teeth grow

H

habitual (adj): sth done usually or often, typical, characteristic
handicapped (adj): having a physical or mental disability
handlebar (n): upper front part of a bicycle for holding and steering
hang around (phr v): spend time somewhere or with sb
harbour (n): area of the sea at the coast, partly enclosed by land or strong walls and safe for boats
harm (v): cause physical injury to sb, usually on purpose
harmless (adj): not dangerous, safe
haste (v): act quickly
hatch (v): when an animal comes out of its egg by breaking the shell
heater (n): a device used to keep sb or an area warm
herb (n): a plant whose leaves are used in cooking to add flavour
herd (n): a group of animals of one kind that live together
hesitate (v): pause slightly while doing or saying sth because you are uncertain

or worried about it

hibernate (v): spend the winter in a state of deep sleep
hideout (n): a place where sb hides from the police or the authorities
high-pitched (adj): a high tone of voice
hospitality (n): friendly welcoming behaviour towards guests or strangers
huddle (v): a number of animals or people sitting or lying close to each other
hurricane (n): an extremely violent wind or storm
hyperactive (adj): very active, overactive

I

ideal (adj): perfect
identify (v): recognise, distinguish
ignore (v): pay no attention to sb or sth
illegally (adv): against the law
illiterate (n): sb who can't read or write
impatient (adj): not patient
imply (v): indicate or say sth indirectly, hint at sth
impolite (adj): not polite
import (v): buy products or raw materials from another country for use in your own country
impose (v): use your authority to force people to accept sth
impression (n): what you think of sb or sth
impressive (adj): exciting, amazing
improbable (adj): unlikely to be true or to happen
in accordance (pp): according to
in progress (pp): still going on
incident (n): an event, occurrence, sth that happens
include (v): make sb or sth a part of a larger whole
inconsiderate (adj): not caring how your words or actions will affect other people, thoughtless
inconvenient (adj): causing problems or difficulties
increase (v): become greater in the number, level or amount
indeed (adv): in fact
indicate (v): point out, show, suggest, imply
indigestion (n): when the stomach cannot process the food easily
independence (n): when a country has its own government and is not ruled by another country
individual (adj): relating to one particular person, rather than to a large group
industrial (adj): related to or used in industry (factories)

inherit (v): receive money or property from sb who has died
initially (adv): at the beginning
insect repellent (n): a product that can

be sprayed in the air or on the body to keep insects away

insistence (n): strong wish to do sth and refusing to give in
install (v): fit a piece of equipment somewhere so that it is ready to be used
instructor (n): sb who teaches a skill such as driving or skiing
instrument (n): a tool or device used for doing a particular task
insufficient (adj): not enough

insurance company (n): a company into which people pay money so that if anything happens to them, the company pays them out

insure (v): pay money to an insurance company
intelligence (n): the ability to understand, think and learn quickly
intend (v): decide or plan to do sth
interrupt (v): stop an activity for a period of time

intruder (n): sb who goes into a place where they are not supposed to be

involve (v): contain, include

irrational (adj): not logical

irresponsible (adj): not responsible, careless

irritation (n): a feeling of annoyance, especially for sth that you cannot easily stop or control

isolate (v): separate from other people physically or socially

issue (n): topic, theme

J

judge (v): form an opinion about sb or sth, evaluate, assess
jumper (n): a pullover, usually a woollen sweater
junction (n): where roads or railway lines meet and cross
justice (n): fairness in the way people are treated

K

kid yourself (v): believe sth that is not true
knit (v): make sth from wool by using two knitting needles or machine
knot (v): tying a string or rope upon itself

L

laboratory (n): a place where scientific research is carried out
launch (v): start a campaign, etc.
law (n): system of rules developed by a society or government in order to deal with crime, business agreements or social relationships
layer (n): a flat strip of a material
lead (n): a soft, grey metal (used in pencils)
leak (n): a hole through which liquid or

gas
leak
from
other
lean
direct
lectu
peop
legib
light
the s
limit
liqui
solid
litera
litter
loath
locat
loop
louse
bodie
feed c
loyal
lunar
lungs
used f
M
magis
a judg
minor
mainly
maint
level
malar
mosqu
malno
mamm
give bi
mango
manifa
organis
large q
manip
people
manlik
similar
manoe
position
margar
instead
master
servant
masterp
work of
measles
causes h
measure
the autho
particula
measure
measuri
medical
medicatio
used to tr

gas can pass
leakage (n): when liquid or gas escapes from a pipe or container due to a hole or other fault
lean (v): bend your body in a particular direction
lecture (n): a talk given in order to teach people about a particular subject
legible (adj): clear and easy to read
lightning (n): a bright flash of light in the sky during a thunderstorm
limit (v): restrict
liquid (n): a substance that flows (not solid or gas)
literate (adj): able to read and write
litter (v): throw rubbish on the ground
loathing (n): great dislike and disgust
locate (v): find out where sb or sth is
loop (n): curved or circular shape
louse (n): small insect living on the bodies of people or animals and bites to feed off their blood
loyal (adj): faithful
lunar (adj): related to the moon
lungs (n): two organs inside our chest used for breathing

M

magistrate (n): an official acting as a judge in law courts which deal with minor crimes or disputes
mainly (adv): primarily, mostly
maintain (v): keep at the same rate or level
malaria (n): a serious disease carried by mosquitoes
malnourished (adj): not fed properly
mammal (n): species whose females give birth to babies, not eggs
mango (n): a tropical fruit
manufacturer (n): a person or organisation which produces goods in large quantities
manipulate (v): skilfully persuade people to do what you want
manlike (n): having characteristics similar to a human
manoeuvre (n): movement from one position to another
margarine (n): a yellow spread used instead of oil or butter
master (n): sb with authority over a servant or slave
masterpiece (n): an extremely good work of art
measles (n): infectious illness that causes high temperature and red spots
measure (n): action carried out by the authorities in order to achieve a particular result
measurement (n): the process of measuring an amount or size
medical (adj): related to medicine
medication (n): pharmaceutical products used to treat an illness or disease

meditation (n): remaining silent and calm, thinking about sth carefully and deeply for a long time
medium (adj): average, midway between extremes
military service (n): service in a country's armed forces
mineral (n): a substance naturally formed in rocks and in the earth, and also found in small quantities in food and drink
minimise (v): reduce sth to the lowest possible level or prevent it from increasing beyond that level
misfortune (n): sth unpleasant or unlucky
mislead (v): give sb a wrong idea about sth
mist (n): thin fog
mole (n): dark spot on the skin
moral (adj): behaving in a way that you think is right, proper or acceptable
mould (v): form into sth
mountaineering (n): climbing the steep sides of a mountain
mud (n): a sticky mixture of soil and water
mugging (n): attacking sb in order to steal their money

N

narrative (n): a story or account of a series of events
nation (n): the people of a country
neat (adj): organised, clean, tidy
neglect (v): fail to look after sth properly
nickname (n): an informal name
nomadic (adj): travelling from place to place rather than living somewhere permanently
nonsense (n): anything silly or that does not make sense
noodle (n): ribbon-like strip of pasta
noticeable (adj): obvious
nuclear testing (n): the testing of nuclear power
nuclear weapon (n): weapon that uses nuclear energy
nutrition (n): taking food into the body and absorbing the substances that are necessary for staying healthy

O

observe (v): keep an eye on sth, watch it carefully
obvious (adj): easy to see or understand
occasion (n): the time when sth happens, instance of sth happening
occupy (v): have, hold or use sth
occur (v): happen, take place
omit (v): leave out
on a daily basis (pp): done every day
on the edge of your seat: very interested or excited, waiting to see what will happen

onwards (adv): moving forward, continuing
operate (v): work, use
operation (n): surgery
opportunity (n): a situation in which it is possible to do sth, chance
opposing (adj): not the same, completely different
optional (adj): sth you can choose to do or not, not compulsory
ordinary (adj): normal, not special or unusual
origin (n): the beginning of sth
outcome (n): the result of an action or situation
outer space (n): the area outside the earth's atmosphere where other planets are
overalls (n): piece of clothing covering the whole body
overcome (v): deal with a problem or a feeling successfully, control it
overestimate (v): estimate sth too highly
overnight (adv): immediately, suddenly
overseas (adv): abroad, to or from another country
overtime (n): time you spend doing your job in addition to your normal working hours
overweight (adj): weighing more than is considered healthy
ownership (n): owning sth
ozone layer (n): part of the earth's atmosphere that protects us from harmful radiation

P

paintbrush (n): a brush used for painting
parade (n): a procession of people or vehicles moving through a public place in order to celebrate an important day or event
parsley (n): a small plant with curly leaves used for flavouring or decorating food
passer-by (n): a person walking past sb or sth
patient (n): sb receiving medical treatment from a doctor or hospital
pattern (n): repeated or regular way in which sth happens or is done
peak (n): the highest level of sth
peel (v): remove the skin of a fruit or a vegetable
perception (n): understanding things through the senses
perform (v): carry out an action, especially a complicated task
permit (v): allow sb to do sth or sth to happen
persistence (n): continuing to do sth despite the difficulties
persuasive (adj): capable of making sb believe or do sth

pessimist (n): sb who thinks bad things are going to happen

pick up (phr v): collect

picturesque (adj): attractive, interesting and unspoiled place

pierce (v): make holes through sth

pillow (n): a rectangular cushion for resting your head when you sleep

pine (n): a type of wood, light in colour

pipeline (n): a large pipe used for carrying oil or gas over a long distance, often underground

pitch (v): put up a tent

pity (n): feeling very sorry for sb

plaque (n): sth that forms on the surface of the teeth and causes gum disease

plaster (n): material that is put on broken legs or arms in order to allow the broken bone to mend

pluck (v): pull the strings of a musical instrument with your fingers

polar (adj): related to the earth's poles

policy (n): a set of ideas or plans used as a basis for decisions in politics, economics or business

polish (v): make sth shine

possess (v): have or own sth

possession (n): anything that you own, that belongs to you

post (v): mail

postpone (v): delay, put off

pouch (n): a pocket of skin on an animal's stomach in which its baby grows (e.g. a kangaroo)

practice (n): (1) the work a professional does (2) anything done regularly

precaution (n): action taken to avoid a dangerous or undesirable event

precede (v): be in front of sb or sth

precisely (adv): exactly

predict (v): say that sth will happen in the future

preheat (v): heat up in advance (e.g. an oven)

pretend (v): act in a way that could make people believe that sth is true although it isn't

pride (n): feeling of satisfaction because you have done sth good or well

priority (n): the most important thing that must be done or dealt with

private (adj): for one person or small group, not for the general public

process (n): a way of doing sth

prohibit (v): forbid or make sth illegal, ban

promote (v): give sb a more important job in the organisation they work for

promotion (n): when you are given more important things to do in your job and earn more money

proper (adj): appropriate, correct, suitable

properly (adv): correctly, satisfactorily, appropriately

property (n): (1) anything that belongs to sb (2) a building and the land belonging to it

protest (n)/(v): say or show publicly that you object to sth

publicity sheet (n): a sheet of paper advertising certain products

publish (v): print numerous copies of a book or magazine

Q

qualifications (n): the qualities and skills necessary for doing a task

quantity (n): an amount of sth

quarrel (n): a disagreement, argument

queue (n): a line of people, cars, etc. waiting for sth

quit (v): stop doing sth, give up

R

race (n): a group of people of common ancestry

rainfall (n): the amount of rain that falls during a particular period

raise (n): an increase in sb's wages or salary

raise (v): (1) bring up a child (2) collect (money, etc.)

ransom (n): money demanded by a kidnapper in order to set free a person they have kidnapped

rate (n): the degree or extent to which sth happens

reasonable (adj): quite good, fair, sensible

recognise (v): know who a person is or what sth looks like

recommend (v): advise, suggest sth as the best choice

reconnect (v): connect again

reconsider (v): think about sth again and see if it needs changing

recover (v): regain health after being ill

rectangular (adj): a shape with two pairs of equal, parallel sides

referee (n): an official who controls a sports match

refreshment stand (n): a small shop or stall with an open front selling soft drinks

refuel (v): to fill the petrol tank with more fuel

refugee (n): sb who has been forced to leave their country due to a war or because of their political or religious beliefs

regardless of (adj): not affected or influenced by sth, not taking sth into consideration

regards (n): greetings, friendly feelings towards someone

region (n): large area of land

regret (v): feel sad or disappointed because of sth that happened

regulation (n): rule controlling people's

behaviour or the way sth is done

reject (v): (1) not accept sth (2) not agree with sb

release (v): make sth available for sale or public showing

reliable (adj): sb or sth that can be trusted to work well or behave in a desirable way

relief (n): feeling glad because sth unpleasant has not happened or is no longer happening

relieve (v): make sth less unpleasant, cause sth unpleasant to disappear

rely on (v): depend on sb or sth

remain (v): stay in a particular place or condition

remove (v): take sth away from where it is

renovate (v): restore a building to good condition

replace (v): take the place of sth

represent (v): act on behalf of sb or sth

representative (n): sb who acts on behalf of another person or a group of people

require (v): need, demand

resent (v): feel bitter and angry about sb or sth

reserved (adj): not expressing your feelings

resign (v): formally announce that you are leaving a job or position

resort (n): a place where many people go for holidays

response (n): reply, reaction, answer

responsibility (n): duties that you have because of your job or position

restless (adj): impatient, finding it difficult to keep still

restore (v): return sth to its original condition

restrict (v): prevent sb from acting freely

restriction (n): sth that limits what you can do

restrictive (adj): preventing you from doing sth

reverse (adj): the opposite to sth

review (n): report or talk expressing your opinion on sth

revival (n): becoming active or popular again

revolution (n): an attempt by a group of people to change the political system of their country by force

revolve (v): move in a circle around a central point or line

robe (n): a loose piece of clothing which covers all your body and goes down to your toes

roll (v): move along a surface turning over many times

roller-coaster (n): a small railway that goes up and down steep slopes and people ride for pleasure and excitement

roots
or cui
from
rough
route
another
row (r
rubbe
substanc
ruin
runne
secon
rush
ruthle
S
safeg
being
sale (s
salmo
found
samp
showi
scales
weigh
scarce
rarely
schedu
particu
scienc
taking
part of
scratches
sth wit
screen
picture
seabed
the sea
seat be
across
car or p
seek (s
seldom
select
self-co
sure of
selfish
not abo
send o
sense (s
sequen
occurin
order
session
takes pl
other ac
shallow
shape (s
sheet (n
shelter
place w
weather
shepher
shoelace

roots (n): sb's background, the place or culture that sb or their family comes from
rough (adj): violent, harsh
route (n): the way from one place to another
row (n): a line of people or things
rubber (n): strong waterproof elastic substance
ruin (v): damage, spoil, harm
runner-up (n): sb who has finished in second place of a race or competition
rush (v): go somewhere quickly
ruthless (adj): cruel, willing to do anything that is necessary to achieve sth

S
safeguard (v): protect sb or sth from being harmed, lost or badly treated
sale (n): the quantity of products sold
salmon (n): a soft fish with pink flesh found in the Pacific and Atlantic oceans
sample (n): a small quantity of a product showing you what it is like
scales (n): machine or device used for weighing people or things
scarcely (adv): barely, only just, rarely
schedule (v): arrange sth to happen at a particular time
science-fiction (n): fiction about events taking place in the future or in another part of the universe
scratch (v): mark or cut the surface of sth with a rough or sharp instrument
screen (n): a flat surface on which pictures or words are shown
seabed (n): the ground at the bottom of the sea
seat belt (n): a strap that you fasten across your body while sitting in a car or plane for safety
seek (v): try to find
seldom (adv): rarely
select (v): choose
self-confidence (n): being confident and sure of yourself
selfish (adj): caring only about yourself, not about other people
send off (phr v): send sth by post
sense (v): become aware of sth
sequence (n): a series of things or events occurring one after another in a particular order
session (n): a period during which sth takes place (eg. an official meeting or other activity)
shallow (adj): not deep
shape (n): figure or outline of sth
sheet (n): a rectangular piece of paper
shelter (n): small building or covered place which will protect people from bad weather or bomb attacks
shepherd (n): sb who looks after sheep
shoelace (n): a string that ties up a shoe

shore (n): the land along the edge of a river, sea or lake
Siamese twins (n): twin babies born joined together at some point of their body
sickening (adj): making you feel sick
side effects (n): the harmful effects of a drug or medicine
sigh (v): let out a deep breath, expressing disappointment or tiredness
sightsee (v): visit places that are of interest to tourists
significance (n): importance
significant (adj): very important
signify (v): mean, represent sth
site (n): place
sketching (n): quick drawing without much detail
skilful, skillful (adj): doing sth very well
skill (n): knowledge and capability enabling you to do sth well
skull and crossbones (n): a picture of a human skull over a pair of crossed bones, used to indicate death or danger
sky-diving (n): jumping out of an aeroplane and falling through the air using a parachute
slant (v): lean to the left or to the right
sleeves (n): parts of clothing covering your arms
sliding door (n): a type of door which opens and closes by sliding left or right
slight (adj): being very small in degree or quantity
slippery (adj): sth difficult to walk on because it is wet, smooth or greasy
slot (n): a narrow opening in a machine or container in which coins can be inserted
(at a) snail's pace (pp): very slowly
social worker (n): sb whose job is to give help and advice to people who have serious problems
solid (adj): very hard or firm
sore (adj): causing you pain and discomfort
source (n): the place where sth begins
spacious (adj): large in size, with lots of room
spectacular (adj): impressive, breathtaking, fantastic
speech (n): a formal talk which sb gives to an audience
spice (n): powder or seeds from particular plants, which are put in food to give it flavour
spicy (adj): food strongly flavoured with spices
spike (n): a long piece of metal with a sharp point
spiritual (adj): related to people's deepest thoughts and beliefs
split up (phr v): separate
spread (v): affect a large area or many people

spy (n): sb who obtains secret information about another country or organisation
squeeze (v): get the juice out of a fruit or vegetable by pressing it
stable (n): a building on a farm where animals are kept
stage (n): a step of development
stain (n): a mark which is difficult or impossible to remove by washing
staircase (n): a set of stairs inside a building
stake (n): pointed wooden post
standard (n): sth used in order to judge the quality of sth else
starch (n): a carbohydrate found in bread, pasta, potatoes, etc.
stare (v): look at sb or sth for a long time, often rudely or impolitely
startle (v): surprise and frighten slightly
starve (v): suffer greatly from lack of food
state (v): say or write sth in a formal or definite way
status (n): social or professional position
steam (n): hot mist that forms when water boils
steel (n): a very strong metal made from iron
sting (v): when an insect or a plant pricks you and causes you a sharp pain
stock (n): a supply of sth
store (v): keep things somewhere in order to use them when they are needed
storm (n): a lot of rain and high winds
strain (n): intense physical or mental effort
strategy (n): a general plan in order to achieve sth
street directory (n): a book containing maps of the streets of a city
strengthen (v): make sth stronger
strict (adj): severe, sth that must be obeyed
structure (n): the way sth is built or made
stuck (adj): unable to move although you want to get away from a place or situation
substantially (adv): significantly, greatly
substitute (v): take the place of sth else
subway (n): underground railway
suitable (adj): right or appropriate for a job or position
suntan lotion: a cream you put on your skin when sunbathing
superficial (adj): related to the surface or the most obvious features of sth
superior (adj): much better than sb or sth else
supplement (n): a pill containing nutritious elements, taken in order to

improve your health or diet
supplies (n): food and equipment necessary for sth
surface (n): the flat top part of sth
surrender (v): not resist or give up the effort to win
surround (v): be all around sth
survey (n): trying to find out information about a group of people by asking a series of questions
survivor (n): sb who continues to live after a disaster, accident or illness
sweat (n): liquid which comes through the skin when you are hot, ill or afraid

T

tactfully (adv): taking care not to say or do sth that would hurt other people's feelings
tactic (n): a method used in order to achieve sth
take turns (v): when two people do sth one after the other
talkative (adj): talking a lot
tap (n): a device that controls the flow of a liquid coming from a pipe
t-bar (n): the top of the letter T
tear (v): rip or cut sth
telephone directory (n): a book listing people's names, addresses and phone numbers in alphabetical order
terrify (v): scare, frighten
testify (v): give a statement about sth in court
thicken (v): become more solid
threaten (v): say that you will do sth to sb in order to make them do sth you want
thrill (n): great excitement, pleasure or fear
throughout (prep): from the beginning till the end
thunder (n): a loud noise from the sky coming after a flash of lightning
to a certain extent: up to a certain point
tolerate (v): put up with sth, accept it although you don't like it
tool (n): a useful instrument or piece of equipment
topple over (phr v): fall over, collapse
totally (adv): completely
track (n): the rails along which a train travels
train (v): learn different skills in order to do sth
transfer (v): cause sb/sth to move to a different place
transport (n): means of travelling
trapped (adj): unable to escape or move
trigger off (phr v): cause sth to happen
trillion (n): a number with twelve zeros
troublesome (adj): causing trouble
trustworthy (adj): very reliable and responsible
tube (n): a long hollow object like a pipe

tulip (n): a kind of bell-shaped flower
tuna (n): large fish living in warm seas and caught for food
twist (v): injure your ankle or wrist by turning it too sharply
tyre (n): a thick piece of rubber fitted onto the wheels of vehicles

U

unattended (adj): unwatched, left alone, abandoned
unaware (adj): having no knowledge of sth
unbearably (adv): in a very unpleasant, painful or upsetting way
unbelievable (adj): very good, impressive, extreme, sth that you cannot believe
uncertainty (n): doubt, not being sure about what to do
unconscious (adj): having lost consciousness, unaware of what is going on
underqualified (adj): not qualified enough
underwater link (n): connection between two places beneath the water
unexpected (adj): sth surprising because you don't expect it to happen
universe (n): all the stars and planets
unleaded fuel (n): petrol containing less lead in order to protect the environment
unlikely (adj): not very probable to happen
unrestrained (adj): out of control
unsteady (adj): not steady, shaky
up-to-date (adj): the newest thing of its kind, valid
upward (adj): moving towards a higher point or level
urge (v): try hard to persuade someone to do sth
utensil (n): anything used to cook with
utterly (adv): completely, absolutely

V

vacation (n): holiday
vaccinate (v): give sb an injection in order to prevent them from falling ill
vaccine (n): an injection that prevents people from getting a disease
vacuum (v): clean sth with a vacuum cleaner
value (n): how important or useful sth is
values (n): moral principles and beliefs, ethics
variety (n): different types of sth
vehicle (n): a car, bus, train etc.
vet (n): a doctor for animals
via (adv): going through a place
victim (n): sb who has been hurt or killed
victorious (adj): having won a war, struggle or competition

violent (adj): using physical force or weapons with the intention to do harm
virus (n): a kind of germ that can cause diseases
voluntary (adj): sth done or performed willingly

W

wage (n): payment in return for work or services
warehouse (n): a large building where goods are stored
warning (n): anything informing people of a possible danger, problem or sth unpleasant
warrior (n): a fighter or soldier (especially in past times)
wax (v): polish a surface by spreading a thin layer of wax on it
weapon (n): a gun, knife or other object used for killing or hurting people or animals
well-behaved (adj): with good manners
wet (v): get water or some other liquid over sth
whatsoever (adv): at all
wheat (n): cereal crop grown for food
whereabouts (n): the location of sth
white lie (n): minor or unimportant lie
willing (adj): wanting, not mind doing sth
willingness (n): desire, strong wish to do sth
wipe (v): clean up with a cloth
wise (adj): clever, sensible, reasonable
withdraw (v): remove, take sth away
witness (v): see sth happen
woodshed (n): small building where firewood or garden tools are stored
worldwide (adv): all over the world
worthwhile (adj): worth the time, money or effort spent on it, enjoyable, useful

Y

yeast (n): a substance which makes bread rise

A
acc
acc
agre
(dis)
aim
apol
appl
(dis)
argu
arrive
ask
assu

abse
accu
addic
afrai
aller
amaz
angr
angr
anno
anxic
ashan
attac
(un)a

(dis)a
advic
(in) a
attach

B
beg f
begin
believ
belon
benef
bewa
blame
boast

bad a
bored
bound
brillia
busy v

(put t

C
care a
chang
collide
come t
comm
compa
compla
concer

Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns with Prepositions

A	account for accuse of agree on sth (dis)agree with sb aim at apologise to sb for sth apply to sb for sth (dis)approve of argue with sb about sth arrest sb for sth arrive in/at ask for assure (sb) of	congratulate sb on sth connect to/with consist of contrast with cope with crash into criticise sb for	desire something demand for departure from description of difference between/of difficulty in/with discussion about/on distance of doubt about
	absent from accustomed to addicted to afraid of allergic to amazed at/by angry at what sb does angry with sb about sth annoyed with sb about sth anxious about ashamed of attached to (un)aware of	(in)capable of careful of careless about certain about/of charged with/for clever at close to sb/sth combined with conscious of content with covered in/with crazy about crowded with cruel to curious about	enter into escape from excuse sb for sth experiment on/with
	(dis)advantage of advice on (in) answer to attack on	(take) care of cheque for comparison between confidence in sb connection between contact between cruelty to/towards cure for	eager for efficient at engaged to sb/in sth equal to excellent at excited about experienced in
B	beg for begin with believe in belong to benefit from beware of blame sb for sth boast about/of	date back to deal with decide on dedicate to demand from depart from depend on describe sb/sth to sb die in (an accident) die off/from differ from dismiss from distinguish between divide between/among divide into do sth about dream about/of	(put) effort into sth engagement to sb example of exception to excuse for expert at/in/on
	bad at bored by/with bound with brilliant at busy with	delighted with dependent on different from/of disappointed in/by/about/with discouraged from disgusted by/at disqualified from dressed in	F fail in an attempt fail to do sth fight with fill sth with sth else finish with forget about forgive for
	put the) blame on sb	failure in/to	faithful to familiar to sb familiar with famous for fed up with fond of frightened of full of furious with sb about/at sth
C	care about/for change into collide with come from comment on compare with/to complain to sb about/of concentrate on	glance at	good at grateful to sb for sth guilty of
	delight in deserve despite despite the despite what despite what sb says despite what sb thinks	generosity to/towards	happen to

hear about/from/of	marriage to	responsibility for (make) room for
hope to do sth/for		
handy for	N	
happy with/about	nervous about	
harmful to	need for	
hopeless at		
(no) hope of		
I	O	
include in	object to	
inform of	obliged to sb for sth	
insist on	objection to	
invest in	opinion of/on	
involve in	opposite of/to	
identical to		
ill with	P	
impressed by/with	pay for	
independent of	praise sb for sth	
inferior to	prefer to	
informed about	prepare for	
interested in	prevent from	
idea of	protect against/from	
impression on sb	provide sb with	
information about	punish for	
(have no) intention of	put oneself through	
invitation to		
J		
join in	patient with	
joke about	pleasant to	
jealous of	pleased with	
K	polite to	
knock at/on	popular with	
know of/about	proud of	
keen on	puzzled by/at	
keen to do sth		
knowledge of	Q	
L	pity for	
laugh at	preference for	
leave for		
lend to		
lie to/about	quarrel with sb about sth	
listen to		
live on	qualified for	
look for	quarrel about	
locked in	R	
lack of	react to	
M	receive from	
mention to	recover from	
mistake sb for	refer to	
mix with	regard as	
married to	relieve oneself of	
mean to	rely on	
	remind sb of/about sth	
	replace sth with sth else	
	result from/in	
	related to	
	responsible for	
	reaction to	
	reason for	
	(have a good/bad) relationship with	
	reply to	
	reputation for/of	
	S	
	save sb from	
	search for	
	separate from	
	shout at	
	smile at/to	
	spend money/time on/in	
	stare at	
	succeed in	
	suffer from	
	suspect sb of	
	sympathise with	
	safe from	
	same as	
	(dis)satisfied with/by	
	scared of	
	sensitive to	
	serious about	
	shocked by/at	
	short of	
	shy of	
	similar to	
	skillful/skilled at	
	(feel/be) sorry about/for	
	superior to	
	surprised by/at	
	suspicious of	
	sympathetic to/towards	
	smell of	
	solution to	
	T	
	thank for	
	think of/about	
	throw at/to	
	translate from/into	
	terrified of	
	thankful for	
	tired of	
	talent for sth	
	(have/be in) trouble with	
	U	
	upset about/by	
	(make) use of	
	W	
	warn sb about/of/against	
	waste time/money on	
	worry about	
	write to sb	
	worried about	

Ah
ah
ah
ahAt
at t
at t
at t
at t
at b
at t
at t
at t
at t
at fBef
befBy
by a
by a
by a
by a
by bFor
for a
for c
for a
for e
for f
for f
for g
(take
for hIn
in ac
in ac
in ag
in ai
in be
in th
in br
in ca
in ca
in ch
in cc
in co

Prepositional Phrases

Ahead

ahead of one's time
ahead of schedule

at first sight

at a glance

at hand

at a high speed

at a hotel

at....km per hour

at last

at least

at a loss

at the match

at midnight

at the moment

at most

at night

at noon

at once

at peace/war

at present

at random

at any rate

at the same time

at the station

at the time

at times

at the top of

at university

at the weekend

at 23 Oxford St.

At

at the age of
at the airport
at the beginning (of)
at the bottom of
at breakfast/lunch/dinner
at the bus stop
at the corner
at dawn
at one's desk
at the door
at the end (of)
at first

at first sight
at a glance
at hand
at a high speed
at a hotel
at....km per hour
at last
at least
at a loss
at the match
at midnight
at the moment
at most
at night
at noon
at once
at peace/war

Before

before long

by chance
by cheque
by day/night
by far
by force
by hand
by heart
by land
by means of

by mistake
by now
by oneself
by phone/post/air mail
by one's side
by the time
by the way

By

by accident
by air/rail/road/sea
by appointment
by birth
by bus/car/plane etc.

for instance
for the rest of
for one's sake
for the time being
for a while

from experience
from memory
from now on
from time to time

For

for ages
for certain
for a change
for ever
for fear (of)
for fun
for good
(take sth) for granted
for hire/sale

in conclusion
in good/bad condition/shape
in control of
in the country
in danger
in debt
in demand
in detail
in difficulty
in the direction of
in doubt
in the end
in fact
in fashion

in favour of
in future
in general
in hand
in good/bad health
in hospital
in a hotel
in a hurry
in ink/pencil/pen
in luxury
in the meantime
in the middle of
in the mirror
in a moment

In

in addition (to)
in advance
in agreement (with)
in answer to
in bed
in the beginning
in brief
in case of
in cash
in charge of
in colour
in common
in comparison with

in the mood	in a queue	in no time
in the morning	in reality	in one's free time
in need of	in return	in touch (with)
in the north/south	in the right/wrong	in town
in one's opinion	in safety	in turn
in order/a mess	in seconds	in uniform
in order to	in secret	in use
in pain	in the shade/sun	in vain
in pairs	in short	in a loud/low voice
in particular	in a show	in a way
in the past	in sight (of)	in the way
in person	in a state of	in a word
in pieces	in the station	in other words
in place of	in the streets	in writing
in politics	in the suburbs	
in practice/theory	in good/bad taste	
in prison	in tears	
in private/public	in a bad temper	
in progress	in time (for)	
Off	on the... floor (of)	on tour
off the air	on foot	on the way
off duty	on the one/other hand	on the whole
off the record	on holiday	
off school/work	on an island	
On	on one's knees	
on aafternoon/evening	on the left/right	
on (the) air	on one's mind	
on arrival	on the news	
on behalf of	on the outskirts	
on business	on one's own	
on the contrary	on page...	
on the corner	on the pavement	
on a... day	on the phone	
on a diet	on purpose	
on duty	on the radio/television	
on earth	on sale	
on an excursion/a journey/a tour/a trip etc.	on second thought(s)	
on an expedition	on this / the street (s)	
on fire	on strike	
To	on time	
to one's amazement/surprise	on top of	
Under	to this day	
under age	under control	under pressure
under arrest	under discussion	under strain
With	under the impression	
with regard to	Without	without fail/success
with a view to	without delay	without warning

Derivatives

NOUN

ability, inability, disability

acceptance, acceptability

accident

achievement

action, activity, activation, actor, actress, acting

addition, additive

admiration, admirer

admission, admittance

(dis)advantage

adventure, adventurer

advertisement, advertiser, advert, advertising

advice, adviser, advisability

agreement

alarm

amazement

ambition

anxiety

appearance

applicant, application, applicator, appliance

argument

arrival

astonishment

attendance, attendant, attention

attraction, attractiveness

automation

beginner, beginning

behaviour

belief, believer

bore, boredom

breath, breathing, breather

care, carelessness

centre

cheer, cheerfulness

choice

combination

comfort, comforter

comparison, comparability

competition

complaint

conclusion

confidence

connection

consideration

conversation

correction, (in)correctness

courage, encouragement, discouragement

creation, creature, creator, creativity

crime, criminal, criminality

critic, criticism

crowd

curiosity

danger

dark, darkness

day, daylight

death

decision, (in)decisiveness

dependant, (in)dependence, dependency

description

destroyer, destruction

development, developer

VERB

enable, disable

accept

achieve

act, activate

add

admire

admit

advertise

advise

agree

alarm

amaze

appear

apply

argue

arrive

astonish

attend

attract

begin

behave

believe

bore

breathe

care

centre, centralise

cheer

choose

combine

comfort

compare

compete

complain

conclude

confide

connect

consider

converse

correct

encourage, discourage

create

criticise

crowd

endanger

darken

die

decide

depend

describe

destroy

develop

ADJECTIVE/ADVERB

able, unable, disabled

(un)acceptable>-ly

accidental>-ly

achievable

active, activated

additional>-ly

admirable>-ly, admiring>-ly

admissible

(dis)advantageous

adventurous>-ly

advertised

advisable, advisory

agreeable>-ly, agreed

alarmed, alarming>-ly

amazed, amazing>-ly

ambitious>-ly

anxious>-ly

apparent>-ly

applicable, applied

arguable>-ly, argumentative

astonished, astonishing>-ly

(in)attentive>-ly

attractive>-ly, attracted

automatic>-ally

beginning

behavioural

(un)believable>-ly

bored, boring

(un)breatable, breathless, breathy, breathtaking

caring, careful>-ly, careless>-ly

central>-ly

cheering, cheerful>-ly, cheerless>-ly, cheery

choos(e)y

combined

(un)comfortable>-ly, comfortless, comforting

comparative>-ly, comparable>-ly

competitive

conclusive>-ly, concluding

confident>-ly, confidential>-ly

connecting, connected

considerable>-ly, (in)considerate>-ly, considered

conversational, converse>-ly

(in)correct>-ly, corrective>-ly

courageous>-ly,

encouraging>-ly, encouraged, discouraging>-ly, discouraged

creative>-ly

criminal>-ly

critical, criticising

crowded

curious>-ly

dangerous>-ly, endangered

dark>-ly, darkened

daily

dead, deadly, deathly

decided>-ly, (in)decisive>-ly

dependent>-ly, independent>-ly

descriptive>-ly

destructive>-ly

developing, developed

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE/ADVERB
difference	differ	different>-ly
difficulty		difficult
disappointment	disappoint	disappointed, disappointing>-ly
discover, discovery	discover	discoverable
discussion	discuss	
economics, economist, economy	economise	economic, economical>-ly
education, educator	educate	educated, educational>-ly
employer, employee, (un)employment	employ	(un)employed, employable
end, ending	end	endless>-ly
energy	energise	energetic>-ally
enjoyment	enjoy	enjoyable>-ly
enthusiasm, enthusiast	enthuse	enthusiastic>-ally
equipment	equip	equipped
excitement	excite	exciting>-ly, excited>-ly, excitable
existence	exist	existent, non-existent, existing
expectation, expectancy	expect	(un)expected>-ly, expectant>-ly
experience, inexperience	experience	experienced, inexperienced, experiential
explanation	explain	explanatory
fail, failure	fail	failed, failing
fashion	fashion	fashionable>-ly
favour	favour	favourable>-ly, favourite
five		five, fifth
fool, foolishness	fool	fool, foolish>-ly
fortune, misfortune		fortunate>-ly, unfortunate>-ly
freedom	free	free>-ly
freezer, freezing	freeze	frozen, freezing
(in)frequency	frequent	frequent>-ly
friend, friendlessness, friendliness, friendship	befriend	friendly, friendless
growth	grow	grown
harm	harm	harmful>-ly, harmless>-ly
health		healthy>-ly
height	heighten	high>-ly
help, helper, helpfulness, helping, helplessness	help	helpful>-ly, helpless>-ly
humour, humorist		humorous>-ly, humourless
hunger	hunger	hungry>-ly
idea, idealisation, idealism, idealistic	idealise	ideal>-ly, idealistic>-ally
illness		ill
image, imagination	imagine	imaginary, imaginable, imaginative>-ly
importance		immediate>-ly
impression	impress	important>-ly
improvement	improve	impressive>-ly
information, informer	inform	improved
injury	injure	informative>-ly
inspection, inspector	inspect	injured
insurance, insurer	insure	
intention, intent	intend	insured
invention, inventor	invent	intentional>-ly, intent>-ly, intended
investigation, investigator	investigate	inventive
jealousy		investigative, investigatory
laugh, laughing, laughter	laugh	jealous>-ly
length	lengthen	laughing>-ly, laughable>-ly
life, living, liveliness	live	long, lengthy
logic		live, lifeless, living, lively, alive
loser, loss	lose	logical>-ly
marriage	marry	losing, lost
medication, medicine		married
misery		medical>-ly, medicated
motion, mover, move, movement	move	miserable>-ly
motor, motoring, motorist	motorise	moving, movable, motionless
murder, murderer, murdereress	murder	motorised
nature	naturalise	murderous>-ly
nerve, nervousness	nerve	natural>-ly
noise		nervous>-ly, nerveless, nervy
norm, normalisation, normality	normalise	noisy>-ly, noiseless>-ly
operation, operator	operate	(ab)normal>-ly
(dis)order	order	operational, operative
origin, originality	originate	(dis)ordered, (dis)orderly
owner, ownership	own	original>-ly
		own

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE/ADVERB
pain	pain	painful>-ly, painless>-ly, pained
(im)patience		(im)patient>-ly
peace, peacefulness		peaceful>-ly
(im)perfection, perfectionism, perfectionist	perfect	perfect>-ly, perfectible
performer, performance	perform	
person, personality, personnel	personalise	personal>-ly
photograph, photo, photographer, photography	photograph	photographic>-ally
pleasure	please	pleased, pleasing>-ly, (un)pleasant>-ly
poison, poisoning, poisoner	poison	poisonous, poisoned
popularity, population	populate	populated
possession, possessor	possess	possessed, possessive
(im)possibility		(im)possible>-ly
practicality, practice, practitioner	practise	practical>-ly, practicable
prediction, (un)predictability	predict	predictive, (un)predictable>-ly
press, pressure	press, pressure	pressed, pressing
prevention	prevent	preventable, preventive>- ly
profession, professional, professionalism, professor	profess	professional>-ly
protection, protector	protect	protective>-ly, protected
punishment	punish	punishable, punishing, (un)punished
qualification	(dis)qualify	(un)qualified, disqualified
rain	rain	rainy
reaction, reactor	react, reactivate	reactive, reactionary
realisation, reality, realism, realist	realise	real>-ly, realistic>-ally
reason	reason	(un)reasonable>-ly
reduction	reduce	reduced, reducible
regularity, regulation, regulator	regulate, regularise	regular>-ly
relation, relationship, relative, relativity	relate	related, relative>-ly
(un)reliability	rely	(un)reliable>-ly
religion		religious>-ly
response, responsiveness, (ir)responsibility	respond	responsive>-ly, (ir)responsible>-ly
risk	risk	risky
safe, safety, saver, savings	save	safe>-ly
(dis)satisfaction	(dis)satisfy	(dis)satisfied, (dis)satisfying>-ly, (dis)satisfactory>-ly
science, scientist		scientific>-ally
security	secure	secure>-ly
sensational, sense, sensor, senselessness, sensibility, sensitivity	sense	sensible>-ly, senseless>-ly, sensitive>-ly, sensational>- ly
seriousness		serious>-ly
signature, sign, signal	sign, signal	signed
shortage, shortening	shorten	short>-ly
skill		skillful>-ly, skilled
solution	solve	solvable
starvation	starve	starving, starved
strength	strengthen	strong>-ly
success	succeed	(un)successful>-ly
suggestion	suggest	suggestive>-ly, suggestible
suit, suitability	suit	(un)suitable>-ly, suited
supplier, supply, supplies	supply	
surprise	surprise	surprising>-ly, surprised
surroundings	surround	surrounded, surrounding
taste, taster	taste	tasty, tasteful>-ly, tasteless>-ly
tendency	tend	
terror, terrorism, terrorist	terrify, terrorise	terrible>-ly, terrific>-ally, terrifying>-ly, terrified
theft, thief, thieving		thieving
thought	think	thinking, thoughtful>-ly, thoughtless>-ly
threat	threaten	threatened, threatening>- ly
tiredness	tire	tired, tiring>- ly, tireless>-ly, tiresome
tradition		traditional>-ly
trainer, trainee, training	train	trained, training
truth, truthfulness		true>-ly, truthful>-ly
(mis)understanding	(mis)understand	understandable, understanding
use, user, usefulness, uselessness	use	used, useful>-ly, useless>-ly
valuation, value, valuer, evaluation	value, evaluate	(in)valuable, valueless
variability, variant, variety, variation	vary	varied, various>-ly, variable>-ly
violence		violent>- ly
warmth, warmer	warm	warm>-ly

NOUN

warning
week, weekday, weekend
weight
wisdom
wonder

VERB

warn
weigh
wonder

ADJECTIVE/ADVERB

warning>-ly, warned
weekly
weighty, weightless
(un)wise>-ly
wonderful>-ly, wondering>-ly, wonder

Irregular Verbs

INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
be	was/were	been	lie	lay	lain
bear	bore	born(e)	light	lit	lit
beat	beat	beaten	lose	lost	lost
become	became	become	make	made	made
begin	began	begun	mean	meant	meant
bend	bent	bent	meet	met	met
bind	bound	bound	pay	paid	paid
bite	bit	bitten	put	put	put
blow	blew	blown	read	read	read
break	broke	broken	ride	rode	ridden
bring	brought	brought	ring	rang	rung
build	built	built	rise	rose	risen
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned	run	ran	run
buy	bought	bought	say	said	said
burst	burst	burst	see	saw	seen
catch	caught	caught	seek	sought	sought
choose	chose	chosen	sell	sold	sold
come	came	come	send	sent	sent
cost	cost	cost	set	set	set
creep	crept	crept	sew	sewed	sewn/sewed
cut	cut	cut	shake	shook	shaken
deal	dealt	dealt	shine	shone	shone
dig	dug	dug	shoot	shot	shot
do	did	done	show	Showed	shown
draw	drew	drawn	shut	shut	shut
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed	sink	sank	sunk
drink	drank	drunk	sit	sat	sat
drive	drove	driven	sleep	slept	slept
eat	ate	eaten	smell	smelt/smelled	smelt/smelled
fall	fell	fallen	speak	spoke	spoken
feed	fed	fed	speed	sped	sped
feel	felt	felt	spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
fight	fought	fought	spend	spent	spent
find	found	found	spill	spilt/spilled	spilt/spilled
fly	flew	flown	split	split	split
forget	forgot	forgotten	spoil	spoilt/spoiled	spoilt/spoiled
forgive	forgave	forgiven	spread	spread	spread
freeze	froze	frozen	stand	stood	stood
get	got	got	steal	stole	stolen
give	gave	given	stick	stuck	stuck
go	went	gone	sting	stung	stung
grow	grew	grown	strike	struck	struck
hang	hung	hung	sweep	swept	swept
have	had	had	swear	swore	sworn
hear	heard	heard	swim	swam	swum
hide	hid	hidden	take	took	taken
hit	hit	hit	teach	taught	taught
hold	held	held	tear	tore	torn
hurt	hurt	hurt	tell	told	told
keep	kept	kept	think	thought	thought
kneel	knelt	knelt	throw	threw	thrown
knit	knit/knitted	knit/knitted	understand	understood	understood
know	knew	known	wake	woke	woken
lay	laid	laid	wear	wore	worn
lead	led	led	weave	wove	woven
lean	leant/leaned	leant/leaned	weep	wept	wept
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned	win	won	won
leave	left	left	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
lend	lent	lent	write	wrote	written
let	let	let			

Grammar & Vocabulary Practice

Upper-Intermediate - B2

Grammar & Vocabulary Practice systematically teaches grammar and vocabulary and helps students develop all skills necessary to succeed in the Revised Cambridge FCE Examination, the Michigan ECCE and other exams.

The **Student's Book** includes:

- a variety of grammar and vocabulary exercises
- revision units and practice tests
- a glossary
- appendices with prepositions, prepositional phrases and derivatives

A **Teacher's Book** is also available, as well as a Teacher's Resource CD/CD-ROM with:

- Key to Grammar Book activities
- Tests in PDF format ready for printing
- Tests in modifiable format
- Key to tests



ISBN: 978-960-509-197-2

A standard barcode is positioned vertically on the left side of a white rectangular area. To its right, the ISBN number "9789605091972" is printed. On the far right edge of this white area, there is a small, colorful graphic element consisting of a grid of colored squares.